



PROF. ABHAY CHARAN MUKERJI'S

# LECTURE-N~~OT~~

ON

## SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON

EDITED BY

UMA SHANKAR BAJPAI, B. A.,

"To him, as to the burning levin,  
Short, bright, resistless course was given,  
Where'er his country's foes were found,  
Was heard the fated thunder's sound,  
Till burst the bolt on yonder shore,  
Roll'd, blazed, destroy'd,—and was no more."  
—Scott

---

ANNUNCIATION:

PRINTED AT THE NATIONAL PRESS.

---

**PUBLISHED BY**  
**THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK DEPOT,**  
**ALLAHABAD.**

---

# PREFACE.

---

Lecture-notes from their very nature are unfit for being incorporated in book form without a considerable amount of pruning and shearing, arrangement and method, and probably also of addition and elaboration ; the work of the lecturer has to be supplemented by that of the editor before it can assume a shape in which it may appear as the work of an author. And this is what I have done with Prof Mukerji's lecture-notes on Southey's Life of Nelson.

Southey's *Life of Nelson* is a work that does not require much by way of elucidation : it is simple enough even for the Indian student, so far as the language is concerned. But when we consider the hero, and his worshipper, the biographer, there is a great deal that the young student may be told with regard to the manner of study. I have therefore considerably elaborated the introductory portion of the "Lectures," so as to widen the student's field of interest, and direct him how to study intelligently and well. Much of the evil that is attributed to the system of "cramming" is purely visionary ; "cramming" is not necessarily an unmixed evil, on the contrary, it is indispensable to some extent. For intelligent study does *not* mean that the memory must be absolutely quiescent, and the other intellectual faculties wholly active ; the memory must have its own fair share of work before any study is possible. I for one believe that there is nothing better than *intelligent* "cramming" and that, for all that has been said against it, it remains true that memory is money.

Nevertheless I have discouraged "cramming" in giving no mere dictionary-notes, but such only as serve the purpose of explaining the meaning of the author. With the same view I have preserved the lecture-style language of the notes. For many of these I am solely responsible.



The B. part of the ~~little~~ <sup>Introduction</sup> gives in index-fashion all the personal and professional characteristics of Nelson that have been scattered by Southey in between long narrations of historical incidents. I have taken care to collect them in one place and present them to the student in the form of a complete personal picture of the hero, shorn of all his historical paraphernalia. These would be the lessons he would learn from a study of the life of that great man ; these would remind him how to make his own life sublime, so that, when departing, he would leave behind him—

‘ Foot prints on the sands of time.’

If this little book teaches even a handful of those who will use it how to think while they read, how to arrange and systematise the subject they study, how to profit by the lessons that lie embedded in all good books, I shall have gained my object.

COLONEL GUNJ ;  
ALLAHABAD  
*January, 1904.*

}

UMA SHANKAR BAJPAL.

# INTRODUCTION.

## A.

### THE BIOGRAPHER

#### I.—SHORT BIOGRAPHY.

Robert Southey was born in Bristol on the 12th of August 1774. His father, a native of Somerset, was an unsuccessful linen-diaper. From his mother, Margaret Hill, Southey inherited his buoyant spirits, his practical sense, and his earliest friends. The first of these, Miss Tyler, his mother's half-sister, took possession of him when he was three years old; under her care he saw and heard a great deal of theatres and of acting. His solitary life in an old maid's household threw him upon his own resources and developed a taste for reading. He was sent to several private schools, and had good fortune at none of them, in 1788 he went to Westminster, where he was scarcely more fortunate. After a brief sojourn he was expelled in 1792, because an essay of his on flogging, in a magazine called the *The Flagellant*, was resented by Dr. Vincent, the head-master. At Westminster he gained the friendship of two boys who were faithful to him and helpful throughout his life, these were Charles Winn and Grosvenor Bedford. About this time his father died, his aunt, however, determined that he should go to Oxford. He was refused in Christ Church on account of the article in the *Flagellant*, but he was admitted into Balliol. At Oxford he led his own life, lived in his own thoughts, and got little or nothing from the university. In 1794 Coleridge suddenly came to Southey, and filled his head with plans for an ideal colony in the wilds of America. The new society, whose members were to have all things in common, was to be called "the Pantisociacy." Their life was to combine manual labour and domestic bliss; to attain the latter, Southey set his affections on a Miss Edith Tricker, whose sister married Coleridge. All this was into-

lerable to Miss Tyler, and Southey was banished. He and Coleridge then tried, by lecturing and journalism, to raise money for their American schemes, but luckily Southey's uncle who had educated him,—Mr. Hill, the English Chaplain at Lisbon,—advised him to travel. On the 14th of November 1795, before he started, he was secretly married to Edith Fricker. On his return from Lisbon the marriage was acknowledged, and Southey wandered from one house to another in the south of England. He tried, or was urged to try, each of the three so-called learned professions, but he was scared away from each alike. He could not become a clergyman because of his ultra-liberal doctrines, he could not take up medicine because he had a horror of the dissecting-room, he would not be a barrister for he hated law. So he threw his lot in literature, and in literature alone he found his proper sphere. In 1803 he settled down in his lifelong home, Greta Hall, near Keswick. Henceforth his days were uniform, regular and uneventful. He wrote and read with wonderful regularity, he soon collected a big library of 14,000 volumes. He had children, and lost several, and his house was a refuge for the wife and family of Coleridge. With Wordsworth and Landor he formed close friendships. In 1813 he succeeded Pye as poet-laureate, and some years before his death he was offered a baronetcy, which he declined. Two great sorrows now made him unhappy. In 1809 he lost his eldest son Herbert, and in 1834 his wife was taken to a lunatic asylum, whence she came back to die. In 1839 he married again. That same year his memory failed, his speech became uncertain and his power of writing was gone, softening of the brain set in and he grew worse till his once untiring intellect was rendered absolutely unfit for work. To the last he kept his love of books, and though incapable now of reading them or using them, he would still hover round his library, and handle his books affectionately. He died on the 21st of March 1843; and is buried near his first wife and her children in Crosthwaite Churchyard.

---

## II.—PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS.

“Take him for all in all, it may be said of him, justly and with no straining of the truth, that of all his contemporaries he was the greatest *man*.” Such is the verdict on Southey of a distinguished critic, who had the great advantage of a personal acquaintance with the poet. This is high praise, but it is true. In what respects then was Southey “the greatest man” of his times? Not in wealth, for he was the very opposite of a rich man, not in social rank, for he had no “boast of heraldry” no “pomp of power,”—he was a poor piper, and without much renown. It was in the sublimity of his character where lay his greatness. That character was as simple and sincere, as dignified and grave, as was possible for any human being to develop. A golden equanimity presided over all the lesser golden virtues, and imparted to each something of its own brightness. That golden equanimity was, as DeQuincey remarked of him, bound up in a trinity of chords, a three-fold chain—in a conscience clear of offence, in the recurring enjoyments from his honourable industry, and in the gratification of his domestic affections. He himself says in a letter to Grosvenor Bedford—“Nothing that has assailed my character, or affected my worldly fortune, ever gave me an hour’s vexation, or deprived me of an hour’s rest. My happiness has been in my family, and there only was I vulnerable.” It might be that this equanimity had its source and strength in heathen philosophy, for we know that he was a great admirer of Epictetus. The calm philosophy of “*nil admirari*” fitted well with his calm character; the voice of conscience rang sweet to one who worshipped conscience; the gospel of freedom found quick favour with the apostle of freedom. “Twelve years ago,” wrote Southey in 1806, “I carried Epictetus in my pocket till my very heart was ingrained with it, as a pig’s bones become red by feeding him upon madder. And the longer I live, and the more I learn, the more am I convinced that Stoicism, properly understood, is the best and noblest of systems.”

Southey's philosophy then, was Stoicism, though not Stoicism pure and simple, but one that was well seasoned with the Christian faith. He was no metaphysician, but a practical moralist. To have trust in an all-guiding all-providing Providence, to acquiesce in the disposal of events beyond our control with a staunch loyalty to the Supreme Ruler, to place no value on earthly endearments and worldly possessions, even the dearest and the highest; to think nothing of life itself while employing it in doing good—these were the lessons he learnt from his pagan master, and these are the lessons he indirectly teaches to those who choose to be his disciples. But his chief lesson was the large one of self-regulation, that it is the pride and the privilege of man to apply his reason and his will to the regulation of conduct and to the evolution of character. He had that pride and that privilege himself; he had regulated his conduct in accordance with the best principles of self-government, and he had modelled his character after the best patterns. Though never rich, and often in actual want, anxiety about his worldly fortunes never cost Southey a sleepless night. His temper was always calm and hopeful, relying on Providence he could rely on himself, providing for himself he could rely on Providence. When he had little he contented himself with little, when he had much, he never spent much, and so his income grew with his wants. Business habits he had none, never in his life did he make use of an account-book, but in a general way he knew that money comes by honest work and grows by careful economy,

Then, too, the circumstances of his life prompted him to self-mastery and self-management. That he should every day overtake a vast amount of work was a matter of stern necessity to him; to accomplish this he must tax his quick intellect and energetic feeling to their utmost, and at the same time must never tax them too much. *He could not afford to pass a sleepless night,*

One result of this golden equanimity was that no rivalries or jealousies ever interrupted for a moment any friendship of

Southey. Political, literary, or religious differences, which in other people are mighty engines of offence, seemed in Southey to melt away when the opponent was a friend. Hence it was that he was warm and generous in his praises of his brother-poets. Of Scott he says, "he is a noble and generous-hearted creature, whose like we shall not look upon again"; of Wordsworth: "a greater poet than Wordsworth there has never been nor ever will be;" of Milton: "of such men the world scarcely produces one in a millennium."

One other effect (or perhaps a cause) of this equanimity was also his constitutional bashfulness and reserve, which was heightened by his retired life, his habits of constant study, and in later years his shortness of sight. But once acquainted Southey found it easy to be familiar with a new man, even though he was much below him in intellectual status. Nevertheless it was within the charmed circle of home that Southey's temper and manners were full of a strong and sweet hilarity; the society he loved best was that of old and chosen friends: like Tennyson he dreaded miscellaneous company. The picture of Southey drawn by his friend, Sir Henry Taylor, shows the social aspect of Southey at its best:—

"The characteristics of his manner, as of his appearance, were lightness and strength, an easy and happy composure as the accustomed mood, and much nobility at the same time, so that he could be readily excited into any degree of animation in discourse, speaking, if the subject moved him much, with extraordinary fire and force, though always in light laconic sentences. When so moved, the fingers of his right hand often rested against his mouth, and quivered through nervous susceptibility. But excitable as he was in conversation, he was never angry or irritable; nor can there be any greater mistake concerning him, than that into which some persons have fallen when they have inferred, from the fiery vehemence with which he could give utterance to moral anger in verse or prose, that he was personally ill-tempered or irascible. He was in truth a man whom it was hardly possible to

quarrel with or offend personally and face to face. ...He was averse from argumentation and would commonly quit a subject when it was passing into that shape, with a quiet and good-humoured indication of the view in which he rested. He talked most, and with most interest, about books, and about public affairs, less, indeed hardly at all, about the characters and qualities of men in private life. In the society of strangers or of acquaintances, he seemed to take more interest in the subject spoken of than in the persons present, his manner being that of natural courtesy and general benevolence without distinction of individuals. Had there been some tincture of social vanity in him, perhaps he would have been brought into closer relations with those whom he met in society, but though invariably kind and careful of their feelings, he was indifferent to the manner in which they regarded him, or (as the phrase is) 'to his *effect* in society, and they might perhaps be conscious that the kindness they received was what flowed naturally and inevitably to all, that they had nothing to give in return which was of value to him, and that no individual relations were established."

The enjoyments from his honest industry were also perpetual and recurring. He was a great lover of books; he was a voracious reader, he was a careful student, he was a diligent workman. "Excepting that peace," says Southey himself, "which, through God's infinite mercy, is derived from a higher source, it is to literature, humanly speaking, that I am beholden, not only for the means of subsistence, but for every blessing which I enjoy, health of mind and activity of mind, contentment, cheerfulness, continual employment and therefore continual pleasure." He was a very fast reader, yet a careful student. He used to mark with a small S in the margin whatever he required for future use. He noted down the pages to which he had need to refer on a slip of paper which he used as a book-mark, thus saving the pages of his book from the dirtying process of marking and dog's-earing. Every schoolboy is familiar with his *Stanzas written in his library* :—

## 1.

“ My days among the dead are past ;  
 Around me I b-hold,  
 Where'er these casual eyes are cast,  
 The mighty minds of old ;  
 My never-failing friends are they,  
 With whom I converse day by day.

## 2.

With them I take delight in weal,  
 And seek relief in woe,  
 And while I understand and feel  
 How much to them I owe,  
 My cheeks have often been bedewed  
 With tears of thoughtful gratitude.

## 3.

My thoughts are with the dead, with them  
 I live in long past years,  
 Their virtues love, their faults condemn,  
 Partake their hopes and fears,  
 And from their lessons seek and find  
 Instruction with an humble mind.

## 4.

My hopes are with the dead, anon  
 My place with them will be,  
 And I with them shall travel on  
 Through all Futurity ;  
 Yet leaving here a name, I trust,  
 That will not perish in the dust.

If we wish to form an idea of the stupendous amount of learning he had amassed we should glance over Southey's "Commonplace Book" which has been published, and which contains three thousand double-column pages. And then these are but a selection from the total mass of his jottings ! These include all branches of learning—poetry, biography, history, travels, topography, divinity ; all sorts of languages—English, Latin, French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese. Southey knew well what it was to earn an income by the



pen ; he was well aware of the difficulties which beset literature as a profession. Writing in the *Quarterly Review*, Southey advises the youth of his country in words that have a strangely personal note about them—"Better that he should seek his fortune before the mast, or with a musket on his shoulder and a knapsack on his back, better that he should follow the plough, or work at the loom or the lathe, or sweat over the anvil, than trust to literature as the only means of his support." But yet the bent of his own mind was towards literature in a way that could not be altered.

This studious habit engendered another virtue of his character : he had as any man the pride of independence, but without the vanity. He was seldom drawn into controversy. When stormed with invective or pelted with abuse he walked on with head held high, and never turned round, it seemed to him that he was of a stature to invite bespattering. His self-confidence was high and calm, that he possessed no common abilities was certain, and the amount of toil which went into his books gave him a continual assurance of their worth which nothing could contradict, he had no time for moods of dejection or self-distrust.

---

### III—LITERARY CHARACTERISTICS

Perhaps no English poet was so thoroughly a literary man as Southey. Literature was to Southey the life-giving, life-sustaining element not only to his intellectual existence, but to his animal being as well. He could not live without literature in more senses than one : it earned for him his livelihood, it satisfied the cravings of his intellect, it gratified the yearnings of his imagination, it was his all-in-all. But it should by no means be supposed that he was the first literary genius of his time, or of any time. He was on the contrary only a second-rate poet, in fact second-rate in all departments of literature. He has left us nothing which we would not willingly let die ; but still he has left us much, much that is extraordinary, much that is memorable, much that is interesting.

The first thing that strikes a student of Southey is the *quantity* of his productions; then *quality* is a much less striking feature about them. His collected verse, with its explanatory notes, fills ten volumes; his prose occupies about forty. And then a large number of his works, and those his greatest and most ambitious, were left uncompleted, and this, in some sense, is typical of Southey's whole achievement in the world of letters; there is always something unsatisfying, something unfulfilled, something disappointing about them. He seldom realized, or seldom found scope for his true bent in literature. This is most true of his poetry. In his childhood Southey fell in with Tasso, Tasso led him on to Ariosto, and Ariosto to Spenser. These beautiful, these luxuriantly-imaginative poets captivated his youthful imagination, and he mistook his juvenile enthusiasm for an abiding, a life-long inspiration. His inspiration was not genuinely imaginative; he had too large an inclusion of prosaic commonplace in his nature to be a true follower of that poet of poets. Quite early in life he planned to write a series of epics on the chief religions of the world. The venture was dangerous,—religion is a most delicate subject to handle, religious prejudices are the most deep-rooted of all prejudices, religious offence is the gravest of all offence; and then one single epic is a life-work. No wonder then that Southey hugely failed. His failure can be accounted for in two ways (1) that he was wanting in artistic power; and (2) that he lacked poetic sympathy. He never could construct a dramatic plot or mould it into artistic details; and the result is that when his epics are not wildly improbable they are hopelessly dull. At the best their interest is extrinsic, not intrinsic, pervaded by the glamour of historical romance rather than the light of pure poetry. And a man is not fit to write epics on the religions of the world when he can say of the prophet who has satisfied the gravest races of mankind,—“Mohamed was far more remarkable for audacious profligacy than for any intellectual endowments.” Southey reflected the spirit of his age faithfully, and in all its essential features, excepting perhaps the poetry. For in

poetry his age was the age of the poetry of passion, an age which had ceased listen to Scott's "measured snore," and had turned to Byron's "dear delights of womankind," and Shelley's rhapsodic utterances. With this solitary exception he shared the tendencies of his age a little too much, that is, more than a man of true genius would submit to. Tennyson too represented his age, but was its leader as well. He was a violent Tory in his politics, a bigoted Protestant in his church-creed, a defiant John Bull in his nationality. All this is too narrow for a mighty genius, a great poet, who, as poet, has neither church-faith nor political creed, nor national prejudice.

Southey's political creed was at first of a revolutionary character. On the outbreak of the French Revolution, Southey, in company with a number of young enthusiasts, held most extravagant views of the regeneration of the human race. He believed that the cry of "Liberty, Equality, and Fraternity" heralded the approach of a Millennium, the golden age which they had read of in poetry and fiction, which the ignorant multitude believed to have passed away, but which was in fact only now to come. He heartily agreed with Wordsworth when he had said—

"Bliss was it in that dawn to be alive,  
But to be young was very heaven"

So fully did he sympathise with the French that he almost ceased to be an Englishman. The Reign of Terror had not caused a violent reaction against the doctrine of a Republic, nor did he soon cease to admire France and the horrors of—

- "The red-fool fury of the Seine"

It was not till the Peace of Amiens, that Southey was an Englishman again. From that hour set in a revolution in his revolutionary politics. The honour of England became as dear to him as to her most patriotic son; and he acquired a hatred for Napoleon, inveterate and intense. He now believed that the very essence of human virtue consisted in struggling against the military despotism which threatened to

overwhelm Europe: Southey was now the loudest advocate of a spirited war-policy, an uncompromising enemy of peace. These feelings and opinions gave birth to the *Ode written during the negotiations for Peace in 1814*; and "since Milton's immortal imprecation,—

"Avenge, O Lord, thy slaughtered saints whose bones  
Lie scattered on the Alpine mountains cold"

—there has been no occasional poem equal to it in grandeur and power." One stanza would certainly bear quotation here :—

"Woe, woe to England ! woe, and endless shame,  
If this heroic land,  
False to her feelings and unspotted fame,  
Hold out the olive to the Tyrant's hand !  
Woe to the world, if Bonaparte's throne  
Be suffered still to stand !  
For by what names shall Right and Wrong be known,  
What new and courtly phrases must we feign  
For Falsehood, Murder, and all monstrous crimes,  
If that perfidious Corsican maintain  
Still his detested reign,  
And Fiance, who yearns even now to break her chain,  
Beneath his iron rule be left to groan ?  
No ! by the innumerable dead  
Whose blood hath for his lust of power been shed,  
Death only can for his foul deeds atone,  
That peace which Death and Judgment can bestow,  
That peace be Bonaparte's—that alone !"

But though Southey was not a great poet, he was nevertheless one who had many points of distinctive individuality. His poems of pensive remembrance, of meditative calm are perhaps the most characteristic. But his poems are in the main the outcome of his moral nature. In poetry his style is one of simple grandeur, a quality which he imbibed from the German authors he had studied.

Southey was not, in the highest sense of the word, a poet ; but if we turn from his verse to his prose we are in a

was engaged in operations against Spain and her Colonies ; and he lost his right arm in an attack on Santa Cruz. In May 1798 he was sent by Earl St Vincent to intercept a great French armament, which, under the guidance of Bonaparte, was intended to reach Egypt and to threaten India. His 'squadron, however, having been crippled in a gale, the French fleet escaped from Toulon and reached Alexandria on 1st July. two days after Nelson reached the place in search of it. This accident deceived Nelson who believed the enemy were still at sea ; and it was not until he had made a circuit by Ute to the coast of Sicily, and back again to the shores of Greece, that he heard how the French had effected their landing in Egypt. He hurried back to Alexandria which he reached on the 1st of August. The same day he defeated them at what is now known as the Battle of the Nile. This victory having again combined the continent of Europe against revolutionary France, the court of Naples was drawn into the war ; and, in the struggle that ensued, the king and queen of Naples were compelled to take refuge in Palermo. Suwarrow having driven the French from Italy, the king went back to Naples. Nelson then assisted the allies in successfully besieging Malta which had been taken by Bonaparte on his way to Egypt. By the winter of 1800 he was again in England, having received a peerage for the Battle of the Nile. Immediately after the Northern Powers with Denmark at their head combined against England, a combination known as the Armed Neutrality. In the beginning of 1801 a British fleet was fitted out for the Baltic to put an end to this menacing league. Sir Peter Parker was put in chief command of this expedition, Nelson being only the second in command, for negotiation was to be tried at first, and for this Nelson was believed to have little aptitude. The fleet had passed the Sound by the 31st of March, —Nelson chafing at the delays of his colleague, and at diplomatic efforts which, he rightly thought, would give to the Danes what they wanted, namely time ; and by the 7th April it cast anchor in the waters round Copenhagen. The enemy had already prepared for resistance. Nelson declared for an

pecially on the Jamaica station, had been long permitted to cheat the navy. The time was now at hand when the genius of Nelson was to become manifest. War between England and revolutionary France was declared in the beginning of 1793, and Nelson, on the recommendation of Lord Hood, was made captain of the *Agamemnon*, the first ship of the line commanded by him. He was sent under Hood to the Mediterranean, and there he performed feats of daring and perfect seamanship which at once marked him out for applause and distinction. With a detachment of intrepid sailors he took part in the siege of Bastia which he compelled to surrender. At the siege of Calvi also, where he lost an eye, he succeeded in capturing the place. Nelson, however, was greatest on the sea. In March 1795 the British fleet under Admiral Hotham was partially engaged off the coasts of Italy with a French fleet of superior force; and a French eighty-four, having been dismasted, sheered off, towed by a powerful frigate, and supported by two large ships of the line. The *Agamemnon*, though only a sixty-four, stood out boldly after the retiring enemy, and Nelson's manœuvres were so skilful that he all but destroyed the crippled Frenchman, and kept the whole hostile squadron at bay, without incurring any serious loss. The injured ship, with one of her supporters, was easily captured a few hours afterwards, and had Admiral Hotham followed Nelson's advice, the whole French fleet would have been brought to action, and have probably met a complete defeat. In the winter of 1795-96 Nelson was employed in cutting off the supplies of the French army on the Italian coast in co-operation with the Austrians and the Sardinians. In 1796 Spain, drawn into her old alliance with France, declared war against England, and on the 13th of February, 1797, a Spanish fleet met an English fleet a few miles off Cape St. Vincent. Nelson was now a commodore commanding the *Captain*, and his ship met and overpowered a force immeasurably superior to his own, though he did it in disobedience of orders. For this victory Nelson received a K. C. B. and was made a rear-admiral. During the following months he

immediate attack ; and on the 2nd May the attempt was made, Parker having judiciously left him to act for himself. The Danish coast was fired upon, Copenhagen was bombarded, and the result, though not a glorious victory, was a severe lesson to the Danes, with whom the English concluded a truce. Nelson was made a viscount for Copenhagen, and the Armed Neutrality was soon dissolved. During the summer of 1801 he was engaged in watching the first preparations for an invasion of England already contemplated by Napoleon. The Peace of Amiens brought the war to a close, and Nelson stood on the pinnacle of fame, the acknowledged chief of the navy of England. On the renewal of the war in 1803 Nelson was appointed to the Mediterranean command. He took up his station off Toulon ; and for nearly two years he kept the French in port, in spite of the vicissitudes of all kinds of weather—an example of endurance never equalled. At last at the end of March 1805 the French admiral, Villeneuve, escaped from Toulon. He was at Martinique by the middle of May having been joined by a fleet from Cadiz, and he was in full sail for Europe by the 1st of June, having as yet completely eluded the enemy. Meantime Nelson had sought for Villeneuve on the Mediterranean for several days. He missed Villeneuve in the Atlantic also. But Sir Robert Calder, sent off for the purpose, intercepted Villeneuve off the coasts of Spain, but gained only an imperfect victory. Nelson had returned to England. The Admiralty at once made preparations to attack the fleet that had gone into Cadiz. Nelson was placed in supreme command, and he was off Cadiz in the last days of September. By the 20th October Villeneuve had put to sea with the combined fleets of France and Spain. By day break of the 21st they were descried off the Cape of Trafalgar. The allied fleet was ere long a mass of fragments, disabled, helpless and pursued by their conquerors. But the victory cost England the life of its greatest hero, Nelson. A musket ball fired from the top of one of the French ships inflicted a mortal wound on Nelson about an hour after the battle began, and he died towards evening.

## II—PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS

Nelson is the one man who in himself summed up and embodied the greatness of the possibilities which Sea Power comprehends, the one man for whom genius and opportunity conspired to make him the personification of the Navy of Great Britain. He is not merely a personality or an individual career, but also, as it were, a great era concrete in a single man, who is its standard-bearer before the world. And this is the reason why the man himself is merged in the splendour of his surroundings, and hence in this section an attempt will be made to disengage the figure of the hero from the glory that cloaks it.

1. *Inherited delicacy of constitution.*—Nelson was never of a strong body, and in early life was distinguished from his brothers by a lean body, a pale face and great weakness. We remember he was invalided home from the East Indies, where he was "reduced almost to a skeleton" and for some time entirely lost the use of his limbs,—a distressing symptom that returned upon him a few years later after his American Expedition of 1780, and confirms the impression of extreme fragility of constitution, which is frequently indicated in other ways.

2. *Charm of manner and considerateness of action.*—He was, from first to last, not merely one of those whose services are forced upon others by sheer weight of ability, but men wanted him, because he was a man pleasant to deal with, a man of quick and eager sympathy, of genial inclination always to say the kindest thing, cordial and ready to support those above him, a tolerant and appreciative master to subordinates. It may even be said that in matters indifferent to him, he too readily reflected the feelings, views and wishes of those about him; but when they clashed with his own fixed convictions, he was immovable. Even before he became renowned or had wrought his more brilliant achievements, a jealous brother-captain said to him, "You did just as you pleased in Lord Hood's time, the same in Admiral



Hotham's, and now again with Sir John Jervis ; it makes no difference to you who is commander-in-chief " This power of winning confidence and inspiring attachment was one of the strongest elements in Nelson's success, alike as a subordinate and when himself in chief command " Hence it was that he was always perfectly satisfied with his officers and crew. When he was only captain of the " Albemarle " he had said, " I have an exceeding good ship's company. Not a man or officer in her I would wish to change " So also when he was the commander-in-chief of the British Navy, and going out to fight the battle of Trafalgar, to the bidding of the first Lord of the Admiralty to choose his own officers, he had replied, " Choose yourself, my lord, the same spirit actuates the whole profession, you cannot choose wrong " His frequent praise of others in his letters and despatches has none of the formal perfunctory ring of an official document, it springs clearly from the warmest appreciation and admiration, showing no deceptive exterior, but the true native fibre of the man, full of natural charity and kindness. He was very attentive to the young officers of his ship. He encouraged the timid and the diffident, rewarded the brave and befriended both. He superintended their nautical studies personally with extreme regularity, he made it a point to introduce them to all the good company he could.

It was this charm of manner and the dazzle of genius, even when not fully displayed, that marked him out as a future hero even in early age. Even as a captain, Nelson was pronounced to have been a " great little man " by Sir William Hamulton, who continued his ardent admirer till the last. Prince William Henry, in like manner, entertained a very high opinion of him, and befriended him as far as in him lay.

His kindly character made mutiny impossible under his flag. The same ship, as a few months ago had taken part in the mutiny at Spithead, when commanded by him, was in a few days reduced to so perfect an order that a paper was dropped on the quarter-deck, expressing the devotion of the

ship's company to their commander, and pledging that the name of the "Theseus" should yet be as renowned as that of the "Captain."

No good service done him escaped his hearty acknowledgment, and he was unwearied in upholding the just claims of others to consideration. A singular instance of this is to be found in the strong letter he wrote to the Lord Mayor in which he complained of the city of London's omission to vote their thanks to the fleet that had conquered under his command at Copenhagen.

Hence it was that his sailors used to say, "Our Nel is as brave as a lion and as gentle as a lamb"; hence it was that he was actually canonized as St Nelson after his death; hence it was that his death was felt was a personal loss throughout England.

3. *Vanity*.—That Nelson loved to dwell in thought upon his own achievements, that distinction in the eyes of his fellows was dear to him, that he craved recognition, and was at times perhaps too insistent in requiring it, is true enough; but there is no indication that he ever coveted the laurels of others, or materially misconceived his own share in particular events. Glory, sweet as it was to him, lost its value, if unaccompanied by the consciousness of desert which stamps it as honour. In one of his letters Nelson says, "True honour, I hope, predominates in my mind far above riches." This love of glory or distinction, though it sometimes assumes a childlike exuberance, is in Nelson merely the weak side of his noble longing for heroic action. It must be confessed that it was this same love of distinction that developed in him that unseemly susceptibility to extravagant adulation which he displays in all his conduct towards Lady Hamilton. But at the same time the high opinion he often expresses of his own merits may be readily justified by the great services he did to his country, and by the fact that it was varied by occasional sentiments of deep humility.

4. *Occasional petulance*.—It was this same love of glory, this same susceptibility to flattery that worked like a poison

in his blood and bred discontent with self, which in its turn bred discontent with others. He became petulant and querulous, and he lost that mental elasticity by virtue of which he had successfully overcome the difficulties that he met in his pursuit of glory. His mind became embittered, prone to censure and to resent, suspicious at times and harsh in judgment, gradually tending towards alienation, not from his wife only, but from his best and earliest friends.

Thus it was that he was constantly criticizing his superior officers and occasionally signaling his dissent by some conspicuous act of disobedience. He feels hurt when his services at the siege of Bastia and Calvi are not adequately recognized; he feels discontented when he is not put in the chief command of the Baltic Expedition, he feels jealous when Sir John Oke was given an independent command in the Mediterranean when he was already there.

6 Courage.—It seems at first sight a little curious that courage should need to be specially mentioned as a distinguishing feature of one whose whole life was spent in war. But it should be remembered that courage is not a quality that can be taken for granted in every one of the warrior class; a cowardly captain or a pusillanimous hero is not a contradiction in terms. And then in Nelson's case this courage was of an extraordinary kind; it was innate and manifested itself in his very earliest years. We remember his remark to his astonished grandmother.—“Fear! grandmamma, I never saw fear—what is it?”—as though he believed that fear was some physical object he had never seen. We remember the story of his jumping down into his schoolmaster's garden and plucking the pears that none else would dare to touch. We remember the story of his bear-hunting expedition on the ice. These stories, that illustrate his extreme recklessness of danger, serve further to create the impression that difficulties and dangers did only whet his desire of attempting them. Incidents trifling such as these give keener satisfaction in the remembrance, and offer more convincing evidence of his courage, than do greater deeds.

because more purely individual, entirely one's own. It is upon such as these rather than upon his victories that Nelson loved to dwell in his letters. His personal daring at St. Vincent, and against the gun-boats off Cadiz, ministered more directly to that self-esteem, to that consciousness of high deserts which was dear to him, than did the Battle of the Nile, whose honours he shared with his "band of brothers." It was during the period he commanded the *Theseus* (from May 27th to August 20th 1797), as he himself informs us, that his personal courage was more conspicuous than at any other part of his life. The two principal actions by which he signalized his courage during this time were the capture, after a hand-to-hand fight, of a Spanish barge of twenty-six oars by his barge manned by ten oars, and the unsuccessful attack on Santa Cruz, in which he lost his right arm.

His remarks on some occasions are equally illustrative of his courage. When, during the bombardment of Copenhagen, a shot through the mainmast of Nelson's ship knocked a few splinters about him, he observed coolly, "It is warm work, and this day may be the last to any of us at a moment;" and then, stopping short at the gangway, "but mark you, I would not be elsewhere for thousands."

The last and most striking instance of Nelson's personal courage is to be found in his conduct at Trafalgar. He kept his ship in the forefront of the battle-line; and when, influenced by the consideration of his personal safety, some officers advised him to shorten sail and let their ships pass ahead of the *Victory*, he consented to do so, and yet kept sailing so fast that the other ships had to lag behind. He was fond of wearing his naval decorations, for he used to say, "In honour I won them, in honour I shall die with them." He had his stars on at the battle of Trafalgar, and would not consent to cover them, though they made him a conspicuous mark for the shots of the enemy.

✓ 6 - Love of honour — The one incentive which most powerfully determined Nelson's conduct though life was his love of honour. No material considerations, neither danger

on the one hand, nor gain on the other, ever affected him as did that idealized conception which presented itself, now as duty now as honour, according as it bore for the moment upon his relations to the state, or to his own personality. "In my mind's eye," said he once to his friend Captain Hardy, who afterwards bent over him as his spirit was parting amid the triumph of his last victory, "I ever saw a radiant orb suspended which beckoned me onward to renown" Nelson did not often verge upon the poetical in words, but to the poetry of lofty aspiration his inmost being always answered true

It was even so from his boyhood We remember the story of his school days, when he said to his truant brother, "Remember, brother, it was left to our honour" We cannot forget that famous utterance—"True honour, I hope, predominates in my mind far above riches." We remember his reply to Admiral Digby, who congratulated him on his transfer to a place where there were many opportunities of making prize-money (See p 22)—"Yes Sir but the West Indies is the station for honour! We remember also what he wrote to his wife—"The lives of all are in the hands of Him who knows best whether to preserve mine or not; to His will do I resign myself My character and good name are in my own keeping"

The incident of his quarrel with the American ships will illustrate Nelson's sense of honour So does also his conduct at the siege of Bastia and Calvi and in the attack upon Santa Cruz.

7 Strength and tenacity of convictions—Nelson's singular independence and tenacity in a matter of principle is another great feature in his character Under a conviction of right he throughout life feared no responsibility and shrank from no consequences Truly great in his strength to endure, he knew not the perturbations nor the vacillations that fret the temper, and cripple the action, of smaller men; and, however harassed and distressed externally, the calmness of a clear insight and an unshaken purpose guided his footsteps

unwavering, in the path of duty, through all opposition, to the goal of success. When an officer of the "Boreas," speaking to him of the vexations and odium he had undergone, used the word "pity," Nelson replied, "Pity, did you say? I shall live, Sir, to be envied; and to that point I shall always direct my course." This strength of conviction is the point in his character that marked him as a man of genius. For it is not material certainty of success that points the way to heroic achievements, but the vivid inspiration that enables its happy possessor, at critical moments, to see and follow the bright clear line, which, like a ray of light at midnight, shining among manifold doubtful indications, guides his steps. Whether it leads him to success or to failure he may not know; but that it is the only wise course, the only honourable course, the only course of duty, he knows full well by the persuasion within,—by conviction, the fortifier of the reason, though not by sight, the assurance of demonstration. This is genius, that rare gift which separates a man from his fellows by a gulf not to be bridged by human will. The intellectual endowment of genius was Nelson's from the first; but from the circumstances of his life it was denied the privilege of early manifestation such as was permitted to Napoleon. It is consequently not so much this as the constant exhibition of moral power, force of character, which gives continuity to his professional career, and brings the successive stages of his advance in achievement and reputation, into the close relation of steady development, till he stood unique, above all competition. This it was which had already fixed the eyes of his superiors upon him as the one officer most likely to cope with the difficulties of any emergency. In the display of this,—in its many self-revelations,—in concentration of purpose, untiring energy, fearlessness of responsibility, judgment sound and instant, boundless audacity, promptness, intrepidity, and endurance beyond all proof,—the restricted field of Corsica and the Riviera, the subordinate position at Cape St Vincent, the failure of Teneriffe, had in their measure been as fruitful as the splendour of the victory at the Nile and the bloody harvests of Copenhagen and Trafalgar.

Men have been disposed therefore to reckon this moral energy—call it courage, dash, resolution, what you will—as Nelson's one and only great quality

This clear conviction guided him in his pursuit of 'the French fleet to Alexandria': this clear conviction manifested its own strength in the letter he wrote to the first lord of the Admiralty, defending his conduct,—“I am before your lordship's judgment, and if under all circumstances, it is decided that I am wrong, I ought for the sake of our country to be superseded, for at this moment, when I know the French are not in Alexandria, I hold the same opinion as off Cape Passaro,—that under all circumstances, I was right in steering for Alexandria, and by that opinion I must stand or fall” This clear conviction again guided him at the battle of the Nile, where he said, writing to Earl St Vincent,—“Your Lordship may depend that the squadron under my command shall never fall into the hands of the enemy, and before we are destroyed, I have little doubt but the enemy will have their wings so completely clipped that they may be easily overtaken” This it was which guided him in the great battle of Trafalgar, in which the victory was due to a happy combination of perfect insight with an inspired blindness, which at the moment of decisive action sees, not the risks, but the one only road to possible victory

8 Sensitiveness to anxiety, perplexity and censure—Whatever the cause might have been, the fact remains true that Nelson had a very sensitive heart. He had not in him that hard, unyielding fibre upon which care, or neglect, or anxiety, makes little impression. He was, on the contrary, extremely sympathetic even emotional, and although insensible to bodily fear, he was by no means so to censure, or mental anxiety or risk of losing honour. Of this temperament his harassments during the dispute in connection with the capture and detention of the American ships, and his ceaseless worry in the pursuit of the French fleet in 1798,

during Bonaparte's Egyptian expedition, gave very conspicuous illustrations.

Hence it was that he was also so over-forward to self-vindication. It was no doubt a weakness, but a weakness which sprang from the innate nobility of his temperament, which was impatient of the faintest suspicion of backwardness, or negligence, and at the same time resolved that for any shortcoming or blunder, occurring by his order or sanction, no other than himself should bear blame, directly or indirectly. After the first unsuccessful pursuit of Bonaparte's expedition to Egypt, in 1798, in the keenness of his emotions over a failure that might by some be charged to a precipitate error of judgment, he drew up for Lord St Vincent a clear and able statement of all the reasons which had determined his action, arraiguing himself, as it were, at the bar of his lordship's opinion and that of the nation, and assuming entire responsibility for the apparent mistake, while at the same time justifying the step by a review of the various considerations which at the time had occasioned it.

This extreme sensitiveness was no doubt heightened, if not absolutely occasioned, by his weak constitution. The nerves of illness are so easily fretted that this apparent weakness is easily defensible.

9 Religious feelings.—A man of vast native energy and self-reliance, Nelson had nevertheless that firm trust in God which is more common among warriors than among any other class of men of action. And then we must remember he was a sailor, and a sailor is, of all men, the most unquestionably dependent on God's providence. But though thus relying upon Providence, he never made his faith a plea for inaction. In this respect he was like Napoleon, who believed in Destiny but left nothing for destiny to accomplish.

Writing of an accident that had happened to his flagship during his pursuit of Bonaparte's fleet to Egypt, he said to his wife, "I ought not to call what has happened to



the "Vanguard" by the cold name of accident; 'I believe firmly that it was the Almighty's goodness to check my consummate vanity' When at the battle of the Nile he was temporarily blinded by a wound in the head which he believed to be fatal, it was characteristic that the few lines he was then able to trace in that state of suffering were expressive of that dependence upon the Almighty which was habitual with him In the sense of profound recognition of the dependence of events upon God, and of the obligation to manifest gratitude in outward act, Nelson was from first to last a strongly religious man During the last two years and a half of his life, the chaplain of the "Victory," the Rev. A J Scott, D D., was associated with him in close intimacy as confidential secretary, with whom he talked freely on many matters Says this gentleman of Nelson — "He was a thorough clergyman's son — I should think he never went to bed or got up without kneeling down to say his prayers" We have it on Captain Mahan's authority that he often expressed his attachment to the Church in which he had been brought up, and showed the sincerity of his words by the regularity and respect with which he always had divine service performed on board the "Victory," whenever the weather permitted After the service he had generally a few words with the chaplain on the subject of the sermon, either thanking him for its being a good one, or remarking that it was not so well adapted as usual to the crew More than once, on such occasions, he took down a volume of sermons in his own cabin, with the page already marked at some discourse which he thought well suited to such a congregation, and requested Dr. Scott to preach it on the following Sunday.

The thanksgiving he sent to the minister of St George's Church, Hanover Square, on his recovery from the illness brought on by the amputation of his right arm, the entry in his private diary as he was setting out for the battle of Trafalgar, both illustrate Nelson's religious feelings as does also his conduct in his dying moments.

10. Daily life and occupations — He always rose early, generally shortly after daybreak. He breakfasted in summer at about six, and at seven in winter. and if not occupied in reading or writing despatches, or examining into the details of the Fleet he walked on the quarter-deck for the greater part of the fore-noon; going down to his cabin occasionally to commit to paper such incidents or reflections as occurred to him during that time, or as might be hereafter useful. He dined generally at about half-past 2 o'clock. At his table there were seldom less than eight or nine persons, consisting of the different officers of the ship or the Fleet. At dinner he was alike affable and attentive to every one. he ate very sparingly himself; the liver and wing of a fowl, and a small plate of macaroni, in general composing his meal, during which he occasionally took a glass of champagne. He never exceeded four glasses of wine after dinner, and seldom drank three; and even those were diluted with either Bristol or common water. Probably he never smoked. as there is no mention of it anywhere in his letters or his diary. For two years he lived on purely vegetable food and for sometime on milk and water. He was extremely regular in his habits. He seldom enjoyed more than two hours of uninterrupted sleep; and on several occasions he did not quit the deck the whole night. At these times he took no pains to protect himself from the effects of wet or the night air; wearing only a thin overcoat; and he has frequently, after having his clothes wet through with rain, refused to have them changed, saying that the leather waistcoat which he wore over his flannel one would secure him from complaint. He seldom wore boots probably from a disinclination to trouble his servants to lace and unlace them.

Though his constitution was at no time strong, his general health was far from bad. The only bodily pain he felt in consequence of his many wounds was a slight rheumatic affection of the stump of his amputated arm, on any sudden variation in the state of the weather. He usually predicted

a change in the weather with as much 'certainty from feeling transient pains in his stum, as he could by his marine barometer

His right eye was blinded in the siege of Calvi; his left eye also was very weak; he always therefore wore a green shade over his forehead, to defend this eye from the effect of strong light

### III—PROFESSIONAL CHARACTERISTICS.

Nelson the admiral is every bit the same as Nelson the man. This is not always true in the case of people who have to bear "official" relations with mankind, the taint of officialdom is the most catching, the most clinging of all taints. Nor is it true of all great men alike. It was not true for instance of Bacon, who, in his double character of philosopher and Attorney-General, a seeker after Truth and a seeker after worldly preferments, was a soaring seraph, and a grovelling mammon-worshipper at one and at the same time. But in Nelson's case the thing was otherwise. What he was as a junior officer of a frigate, that he was as Commander-in-chief of the British Navy, what he was when unknown to fame, that he was when at the height of human renown. There is no difference, save in the language, between that earliest remark of his school days,—“Remember brother, it was left to our honour”—and the famous signal he hoisted at that last battle of Trafalgar.—“England expects every man will do his duty”

I Sense of duty.—The most distinguishing of all the distinguished noble qualities that distinguished the immortal Nelson was certainly his strong sense of duty; a strong sense of duty possessed his heart ever since he became conscious of any sense at all, and continued with unabated strength, till all strength was ebbd away in his dying utterance, “Thank God, I have done my duty” In it lay his source of strength, in it he found consolation in the bitterness of fee-

lings of neglect. The feeling of duty had no rival in his heart, destroyed all possibility of an inward struggle between conflicting motives, all petulant discontent with uneasy surroundings or uncongenial duties.

2. *Constancy of purpose*—Nelson had in a very preeminent degree that exclusiveness of purpose which Napoleon justly characterized as the secret of great operations and of great successes. He never knew what hesitation was—once determined, he was determined for ever. And the determination too was extremely quick. His singleness of purpose looked first to his country's service, to the thorough doing of the work given him to do, and only afterwards to the consequences of failure to his own fame and fortunes. Where the choice lay between a precarious indication promising to lead to a great and decisive result and an inglorious security, Nelson would prefer the former,—his disposition could not bear tame and slow measures. With untiring steps did he speed onward and upward—counting nothing as done so long as anything remained to do, forgetting what was behind as he pressed on to what was before. The independence and constancy with which he brought about the conviction of the American ships is an apt illustration of this quality. The singlemindedness he displayed in his pursuit of the French fleet to Egypt, the patience and perseverance he manifested in watching the French fleet off Toulon illustrate the same point.

The key to this heroic steadfastness of purpose is certainly his sense of duty coupled with an acute perception of the right thing to do, an entire readiness to assume all the responsibility of doing it, and above all an accurate judgment of the best way to do it.

It is a pity that this constancy of purpose did not, in every case, lead to the doing of the *morally* right thing. It was with this "heroic" constancy, also, that he determined to leave his wife and throw himself in the clutches of Lady Hamilton. "Fixed as fate" were the remorseless words with which he characterized his firm purpose to trample

conscience under foot, and to reject his wife in favour of his mistress

3. Professional courage — Professional courage differs from personal daring as discretion differs from rashness. It is true that from his boyhood to his death Nelson never showed any indication of the least regard for his own safety, and seemed, on the contrary, to love danger for its own sake. But never in his life was he guilty of exposing his men to needless danger. Even the attack on Santa Cruz had no alloy of reckless foolhardiness, for Nelson knew that English ships and sailors were decidedly superior to those who held the town, and was therefore free from the blame of foolishly fighting against tremendous odds. In unfavourable circumstances he knew how to refuse battle without risking his honour. This is enough to show that Nelson was not, as some suppose, a fool who used to rush in where angels blush to tread. He repeatedly disclaimed that reproach in his letters. He even consented, at the battle of the Nile and Trafalgar, to forego what he prized most highly, the privilege of being the first to grapple with the enemy. At the Nile, his ship was fourth in the order of attack, and at Trafalgar he allowed Collingwood to lead the lee line, which was the first to engage the enemy. Collingwood knew what a sacrifice it was on Nelson's part to allow him the honour of going first, and exclaimed, as his ship charged into the centre of the French fleet,—"Rotherham, what would Nelson give to be here?" When his captains at Trafalgar dissuaded him from leading the weather line, he gave orders in accordance with their advice, but took care that they should not be carried out by sailing as fast as he could and thus not allowing the other ships to get ahead of him.

4 Fearlessness of responsibility — "The test of a man's courage is responsibility," said the great Earl St Vincent; and none ever shone more brightly under this supreme proof than Nelson. The more or less detached services on which Nelson was so frequently sent in the early part of his career, was a very good training in the habit of responsibility. At

the critical instants of the Nile and Copenhagen, as well as in the less conspicuous but more prolonged anxieties of the operations off Corsica and along the Riviera of Genoa, this early habit, grafted upon the singularly steady nerve wherewith he was endowed by nature, sustained him at a height of daring and achievement to which very few have been able to rise.

Nelson was constitutionally fitter to command than to obey, and he was never quite contented except when he had the full control of the warlike operations in which he was engaged. Thus in the earlier years of his naval career we continually find him criticizing his superior officers, and occasionally signaling his dissent by some conspicuous act of disobedience and authority. "You must always," said he to one of his midshipmen, "implicitly obey orders, without attempting to form any opinion of your own respecting their propriety;" but his conduct on many occasions showed that he did not always practice what he preached. We know it was in disobedience of orders that the battle of Cape St Vincent was won; we know that it was in disobedience of orders that the battle of the Baltic became a victory. This disobedience was defended by Nelson himself in the following words, "To serve my king and to destroy the French I consider as the great order of all, from which little ones spring, and if one of these little ones militate against it, I go back to obey the great order."

5. Natural aptitude for diplomacy.—It was not as a mere warrior that Nelson excelled. he was something of a statesman as well, though in a soldier-like way peculiar to himself. We have indications of that in his conduct to the captured American ships, in the way he co-operated with the Austrians and Sardinians in driving the French from the Riviera, and in the way he conducted the negotiations with Denmark after the bombardment of Copenhagen.

Thus it was not merely personal courage, not merely professional courage, but also political courage which made up the greatness of Nelson. His diplomatic ability was reco-

guized not only by Lord Hood and Earl St Vincent, but also in the British Cabinet. But his diplomacy was not like the cautious, slow and hesitating measures of astute politicians, but the instantaneous, quick and decisive conduct of an armed soldier. He himself has told us that 'seamen are bad negotiators, for they put to issue in five minutes what diplomatic forms would be five months long.' One of his maxims of diplomacy was that to negotiate with effect force should be at hand.

6 Administrative capacity.—Nelson was a born commander of men,—not only in battles, but also in the intervals of peace. Equally important, though less brilliant, were his services during the periods of peace that came between his many actions and battles when, by careful attention to the health of his sailors, to discipline, and the details of the commissariat, he carefully paved the way for future victory. We know how, at the outset of his naval career, he kept the *Boreas* for three years in the West Indies without losing a single man. This he effected by giving to his subordinates, sailors as well as officers, constant change of scene and change of climate, and by encouraging them to amuse themselves with music, dancing, cudgelling and theatricals. He was also careful in his supply of fresh provisions and fresh water. The same careful attention to the minutest details was even more conspicuously displayed later during his Mediterranean command.

7 Strategic Ideas.—These have little interest to lay men, but as being those of Nelson they have an interest of their own. The following were the most important strategic ideas of which we find illustrations in Southey:—

(1) That regular approaches, though the slower, were the surer way of reducing a fortified place, and entailed less bloodshed. This is illustrated in his attack of Fort San Juan.

(2) That time is of greater value than life; that regularly-ordered and careful procedures which economize the blood of the soldier did often by their inevitable delays, seriously imperil the objects of a campaign as a whole. In cases of doubt, Nelson's intuition ever inclined him, to

instant and vigorous action, and his intuition was commonly an accurate guide. It was this same intuition that led him to make the attack on Fort San Juan; it was this same intuition that dictated his instant, unhesitating onslaught at the Nile; that caused him, before Copenhagen, to write, "every hour's delay makes the enemy stronger, we shall never be so good a match for them as at this moment"; that induced him at Trafalgar to modify his deliberately-prepared plan in favour of one vastly more hazardous, but which seized and held the otherwise fleeting chance.

(3) Close with a Frenchman, but outmanœuvre a Russian.

## C.

### THE BIOGRAPHY.

I. Of Biography in general.—Biography is that department of literature which treats of the individual lives of men or women. The same word is also used for a prose narrative detailing the history and unfolding the character of an individual written by another. When written by the individual whose history is told it is called an *autobiography*.

This species of writing is as old as literature itself. In the first century after Christ Plutarch wrote his "Lives"; Cornelius Nepos wrote his "lives of Military Commanders"; and Suetonius wrote his "lives of the twelve Cæsars." Modern biographical literature may be considered to date from the seventeenth century, since which time individual biographies have multiplied so enormously that now it is almost the fashion to write two volumes on any one whose name has appeared in the columns of a penny newspaper.

It is impossible to say too much of the importance of biographies in their relation to the history of a nation. History, says Carlyle, is but the summation of the biographies of the world's great men. And—

"Lives of great men all remind us,  
We can make our lives sublime,  
And, departing, leave behind us  
Foot-prints on the sands of time."—

—Longfellow.



2' Source of the Biography —Southey borrowed the materials for his Biography from the Life of Nelson by Clarke and M'Arthur, published in 1808 in two bulky volumes. In the selection of the facts Southey has shown no discrimination, for he has blindly followed his original without sifting evidence, or carrying on any research for himself. He has thus greatly lightened his task, which otherwise would have been far heavier than it was to him. But in the arrangement of his materials Southey has displayed great literary skill. He has re-cast the whole thing in a simpler, more attractive, and compendious form.

The result is that Southey's narrative, while giving to the figure of his hero a more life-like touch, has failed to eliminate those errors of fact and errors of criticism which mar the ponderous volumes on which he based his work.

3 Object of the Book —Southey's "Life of Nelson" is an enlargement of an article he contributed to the *Quarterly Review*—of February, 1810—only five years after Nelson's death. The enlarged form in which it is now known was undertaken at the request of his publisher, Murray. But it was not merely for private gain that Southey wrote this monumental work, it was also for patriotic considerations, as he himself informs us in his preface:—

"Many lives of Nelson have been written; one is yet wanting clear and concise enough to become a manual for the young sailor, which he may carry about with him till he has treasured up the example in his memory and in his heart. In attempting such a work I shall write the eulogy of our great naval hero; for the best eulogy of Nelson is the faithful history of his actions; the best history that which shall relate them most perspicuously."

4 Chief characteristics of the Book —Southey's biography of Nelson is one of the most popular and interesting biographies ever written in the English language. It is alike the favourite of the school-boy, and the delight of the young man. Though it has been in existence for the last ninety

years, it is still as fresh. as now, as when it first saw the light of day.

The secret of this immense popularity is undoubt'edly the charm of the subject-matter, but a great deal also depends on the charm of the style. Southey was master of a clear, chaste style such as few writers of our own time have equalled, and none excelled. And then the glow of lively patriotism that sheds its pervading radiance over his pages is another great reason why the book is so readable and enjoyable. But his patriotism is of the militant, defiant type, so bitter in its hatred of everything un-English and non-English, so haughty in its tone of arrogant self-confidence, so violent in its prejudiced political partiality. For instance his hatred of the French was as inveterate as that of his hero, and hence some of his statements about the French people and their illustrious Emperor, Napoleon, are based more on a bitter prejudice against the national enemy than on a calm estimate of facts. Hence Southey's biography does not possess much excellence by way of historical accuracy.

These defects can easily be defended. We have to remember the times when Southey wrote his book. His biography was completed in 1810, five years before the Battle of Waterloo. It was an age, therefore, of high political feeling, when the eagles of Napoleon were wheeling on high on "Europe-shadowing wings," when the entire continent was divided into a Gallican and an anti-Gallican party, when the breast of every Englishman lodged but the one desire of overthrowing the dominion of France and the empire of Napoleon. It is natural therefore that Southey should regard a Frenchman as twin-brother of the Devil. His hatred of Napoleon can be excused, or at least explained, on another ground. Southey was one of those enthusiasts who entertained exaggerated hopes of the French Revolution, as its being the dawn of a better state of things. These hopes were somewhat damped by the excesses of the Reign of Terror, but even then Southey did not altogether give up his passion for liberty, equality and fraternity. The ambitious wars of Na-

poison came to be regarded by him as the subversion of liberty; the military despotism which threatened the states of Europe seemed to be the exact opposite of that free constitution whose apostle Southey was

His blinding hatred for the French, was an exact counterpart of Southey's equally blinding admiration for his hero. He has overlooked many of the weak points of Nelson's character, and lauded him for virtues he did not possess. In doing so he has certainly diminished the historical value of his biography, but he has gained in popularity,—for the popular mind has a tendency to go to extremes in the matter of praise and dispraise, and is unwilling to strike balance between approbation and disapprobation, merit and demerit. And then in the case of those men who are counted among the national heroes, it would rather wish to see them decked with all the virtues to be found under the sun, than to hear that they were after all like any other mortal.

But it must not be supposed that Southey consciously suppressed the blots and magnified the brightnesses of his hero's character: he was never in his life a panderer to the public taste. These short failings from the truth and the whole truth are due to the fact that Southey lived too near Nelson's time to form an unprejudiced and philosophical estimate of his hero's character—the biographer and the hero were contemporaries, and it is those afar off that see things right. The age that witnessed and applauded Nelson's brilliant victories could not stop to think of Nelson as anything other than a supernatural being; the “saviour of the silver-coasted isle” was too mighty, too great, too sacred to be brought under the close scrutiny of profane criticism.

Again, Southey allowed himself a very limited scope for the choice of his materials. His original was not any original document from an examination of which he collected his information. His materials were borrowed, taken second-hand, not directly. He accepted everything he found in Clarke and M'Arthur as true, without troubling himself any further. But this did not arise from any disrespect for truth;

any carelessness in the matter of accuracy ; but because it was not necessary for his purpose. His purpose was not to write a standard biography, like that of Dr. Johnson by Boswell, or that of Scott by Lockhart, or that of Tennyson by his son, but to write a short memoir that would be " clear and concise enough to become a manual for the young sailor, which he may carry about with him till he has treasured up the example in his memory and in his heart."

But because Southey's biography is not of the standard type that therefore it is worthless is a conclusion which no one, who has read the book even once, would like to accept. The few blemishes that one finds in the narrative are more than made up by the several points of excellence in the treatment. Southey's "Life" is as clear and vigorous a sketch of the great naval hero as any contained in a bigger biography. It falls short of the standard only in so far as completeness and *perfect* accuracy go. If the great achievement of biography is to demonstrate what man can be and what man can do, that success has been eminently won by Southey in his biography of Nelson.

And if the great lesson of biography is to "spur an imitative will" in the reader, that lesson has been taught by Southey in words that penetrate the heart while they fire the imagination and stimulate the intellect. The lesson of obedience to duty, the dominating idea of Nelson's career, has been taught with the force that the sublimity of the lesson demanded : the lessons of patriotism, of honour, of inflexible resolution, of fearlessness of responsibility, of unshaken courage have each found a clear trumpet of their own, a trumpet that the breath of patriotism has caused to ring with a lustier peal than what is possible in the cold-blooded vein of conscious didacticism.

5 The Style of the Book—The style of the book, which is one of its abiding charms, is wonderfully simple, concise and clear. The language is as thoroughly natural as it was possible to make it ; there is no ornamentation, which though

it embellishes the narrative, makes it less natural and more artificial

The narrative is also surprisingly clear, considering that it is the account of naval incidents and the biography of a naval hero by a land-man. Southey was well aware of the difficulties of his subject, but he was also well prepared to meet them. He himself tells us that he walked among sea terms as carefully as a cat does among crockery. Whenever he had to describe the details of naval operations he strictly adhered to the nautical language used in the despatches and letters of Nelson himself, thus escaping the danger of confusion that might have arisen from his disregard of naval technology. But it was nevertheless a great drawback to his genius to fetter it thus with technical words that were not in his line. The result is that his style is rather obscure and artificial when he has to give detailed accounts of intricate naval operations. Except in such passages, Southey's *Life of Nelson* is written in such beautifully natural language that, says Mr Macmillan, "it is an excellent model for students of English composition, particularly for Oriental students of the English language, who are apt to despise plain, simple language, and cultivate a style embellished with florid ornamentation."

But though the style is thus plain and simple, it is by no means dull. On the contrary it frequently rises into an epic grandeur, so far as it is attainable at all in prose. The description of the blowing up of the *Orient*, of the advance of the English fleet into Aboukir Bay, and the concluding paragraphs of the book, are instances of beautiful, graphic, and forcible passages. The last two paragraphs, are according to Mr Macmillan, among the very noblest passages that can be found in the whole range of English prose literature.

NOTES  
ON  
SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON.

---

CHAPTER I.

FIRST YEARS AT SEA.

Para 1

*Edmund and Catherine Nelson*—Edmund Nelson was the name of his father; Catherine was the name of his mother. *Parsonage house*—a house in which a parish priest lives. Now a parish priest may be either a rector or a vicar; in the former case the parsonage house is called a 'rectory', in the latter, a 'vicarage'. The difference between the two orders is that a rector is higher in rank than a vicar, a rector receives the tithes from land as well as the smaller tithes from animals, whereas a vicar only receives the smaller tithes. *Maiden name*—the name she bore before her marriage. At her marriage a European girl gives up the name of her father and takes that of her husband. *Suckling*—Her father's name was Mr. Suckling; she was therefore called Miss Suckling. *Sir Robert Walpole*—a celebrated Whig statesman who flourished in the reigns of George I. and George II. He was first Lord of the Treasury for twenty years, from 1721 to 1741. Born 1676, died 1745. *This child*—Nelson, the subject of this biography. *Godfather*—a man who, at the baptism of a child, stands as a pledge of his future good conduct. *The first Lord Walpole*—Southey makes a slight mistake here. The first Lord Walpole died one year prior to Nelson's birth. Probably he means the second Lord Walpole. *Mrs Nelson*—Nelson's mother. *Of the navy*—He was an officer of the navy, not a captain of

the army. *The widower*—Nelson's father who had lately lost his wife *This event*—i.e., the death of his wife—Nelson's mother. *His uncle*—Captain Maurice Suckling, his maternal uncle. *Appointed to*—made an officer in command of *Raisonné*—the name of a ship. This is a French word, meaning 'reasonable'. The French name shows that it was at one time a French ship, and had probably been captured from the French during some war. It is the general practice throughout the world to give names to ships. *Of sixty-four guns*—the ship could carry on board, and usually did so, an armament of sixty-four guns. The number shows that it was a fairly large man-of-war. *Do write*—I earnestly request you to write *He*—Nelson *Go to sea*—go on a voyage *Bath*—a city of Somersetshire on the right bank of the river Avon, 107 miles from London. It was long famous as a fashionable resort for pleasure, and the benefit of the mineral waters

[Page 2]—*Straitened*—narrow. He was a poor man. *Prospect*—hope *Seeing them bettered*—i.e., becoming richer *Providing for himself*—earning an independent livelihood *Chiefly actuated*—His main object, in desiring to go on a voyage with his uncle, was to earn an independent livelihood, though probably he had other motives too, such as the boyish eagerness to visit new countries. *Did not oppose his resolution*—gave him permission to do as he wished. *Had always said*—had throughout been of the opinion. *Station*—position in life *Climb to the very top of the tree*—rise to the highest rank *What has poor Horatio done &c*—what great fault has he committed that his father should send him on a voyage as a punishment? This sentence is very suggestive. It throws a deal of light on the character of the period dealt with in Nelson's biography. It suggests that the men who joined the navy in those days were generally men who failed to get, or were useless for, any other employment. The navy was the great opening for rash and idle youths, as is also borne out by the account of Clive's early life. *Who is so weak*—Nelson was of a very

delicate constitution. He was, at various periods of his life, a great sufferer, and frequently an invalid; allusions to illness, often of a most prostrating type, and to his susceptibility to the influences of climate or weather, occur repeatedly and at brief intervals throughout his correspondence. This is a factor in his career which should not be forgotten; for on the one hand it explains in part the fretfulness which at times appears, and on the other brings out with increased force the general kindly sweetness of his temper, which breathed with slight abatement through such depressing conditions. It enhances too the strength of purpose that trod bodily weakness under foot, almost unconsciously, at the call of duty or of honour. Rough it out—endure hardships 'It' is here a sort of cognate object to 'rough,' an adjective used as a verb. The force of 'out' in such phrases as this is 'to the end' cf. 'Fight it out'; 'play it out' &c. Go into action—fight a battle. Knock off his head—kill him Provide for him at once—Playfully for—'free his father from the trouble and expense of supporting him'. 'To provide for' is an idiomatic phrase meaning, 'to supply a person with the means of subsistence'.

## Para 2.

His own profession—the naval service Common—because of the draining of marsh lands Greatly reduced his strength—made him very weak. Already—even as a boy. Given proofs of—showed in his conduct that he possessed. Resolute—determined, not easily discouraged. Strayed—slipped away A-bud's-nesting—on bird's-nesting, on a bird's-nesting expedition Cowboy—a cowherd boy; an aku boy, as we would say Elapsed—passed—and still he did not return Alarm—fear and anxiety Apprehended—were afraid. Gypsies—a nomadic people found in different countries, and supposed by some to be Egyptians by descent, and by others to have originally come from India. For an interesting account of the gypsies read Addison's Spectator.



tor—No. 130 Dated July 30, 1711. *Composedly*—calm and unagitated *Get over*—cross *The old lady*—his grand-mother. *The future hero*—the boy Nelson who was destined to rise to such greatness in the future. *I never saw fear*—This simply means.—‘I never experienced fear’, and must not be taken literally to mean that Nelson did not know what the word ‘fear’ meant, and thought it was a person or a material object.

[Page 3]. *A fall of snow*—A fall of snow causes a block on the roads so that they become almost impassable on horseback *Did not much like the journey*—was somewhat unwilling to rejoin school *It*—the snow *Venture on*—attempt to ride over it *If that be the case*—if the snow is really very deep *I will leave it to your honour*—I will allow you to decide for yourselves, trusting that you will not deceive me by telling a lie which is disgraceful. *Reasonable*—i.e., one that every body would admit as legitimate *Persuaded upon*—persuaded *Pears*—what in Hindustani is called *nāshpātī* *Lawful booty*—something which it would not be wrong to take *Temp-ting*—provoking the desire to steal them *Venture*—attempt to climb up the tree. *The prize*—namely, those pears *Volunteered upon the service*—offered to do it for them, of his own accord *Lowered down*—helped to descend into the garden *Sheets*—bed-sheets These bedsheets were tied together so as to serve the purpose of a ladder of ropes *Reserving*—keeping This incident illustrates Nelson’s indifference to personal benefit.

#### Para 3.

*Mr Nelson*—our hero’s father *His ship*—the ship in which he desired to serve *Privations*—hardships *Which are the sailor’s lot*—which a sailor has to experience *The Medway*—a navigable river of England, rising in Sussex and flowing through Kent *The Chatham stage*—the stage-coach running between London and Chatham, a town in Kent, situated on the Medway, 30 miles east of London *After wandering about &c*—This does not refer to ‘officer’, but to Nelson *Forlorn*—helpless

[Page 4.] *Apprised*—informed. *Deck*—the upper surface of a ship.

Para 4

*Transplanted*—removed; made to go *Native soil*—home; mother country. *The living branch*—the boy *Cut from*—obliged to leave. *The parent tree*—home. The metaphor suggests that the pain is so severe that one feels as if one were going to die; for when a branch is severed from the tree, it soon dries up. *After griefs*—sorrows that a man has to bear in after life. *Wound more deeply*—cause greater pain. *Scars*—i.e., memories, traces. *Effaced*—rubbed off; forgotten. *Bruise*—wound; hurt. *Bruise the spirit*—make a man utterly dispirited. *Break the heart*—make him dejected. *The want of love*—the absence of people to bestow love upon. *The necessity of being loved*—the absence of people to bestow love upon us. *Sense of utter desertion*—the feeling that we have been abandoned by everybody. *Haven*—protection and comfort. *Pushed off upon the stream of life*—forced to enter upon the duties of life alone and unaided. The metaphor, which is here introduced by the phrase 'as it were', and suggested by the word 'haven' above, compares a boy entering life to a boat leaving the bank of a river. Life is often compared to a river on account of its continuous course and its varied experiences. *The pain which is felt..... stream of life*—  
Explanation.—The pain we feel when we first leave home is the most severe of all the pains we have to endure in life. We feel, on leaving home, as if we were going to die. The sorrows that come upon us in after life are, some of them, very painful indeed, so much so that they are never forgotten and make us absolutely dispirited and dejected; but they are little as compared to the pain we feel when we first leave the protection and comforts of home and enter life. *Added to*—over and above. *These feelings*—the pain of parting from home. *Sea-boy*—the boy who has chosen to spend his life in the navy. *Physical hardships*—bodily trouble. *Privation*—

absence, denial *Feeble body and affectionate heart*—The result was that both the bodily trouble and the mental pain were, in his case, more severe than in that of ordinary boys His weak health intensified his bodily hardships, his affectionate temperament intensified his mental agony

#### Para 5

*Commissioned*—equipped with guns and manned by officers and men for active service This is what is called 'commissioning' a ship. When its work is done, it is 'paid off,' i.e. the officers and crew receive their wages and leave the ship *The dispute respecting the Falkland Islands*—In 1770 the Falkland Islands, a desolate and then unimportant group, lying in the South Atlantic, to the eastward of Patagonia were claimed as a possession by both Spain and Great Britain The latter had upon them a settlement called Port Egmont, before which a large Spanish squadron suddenly appeared, and compelled the British occupants to lower their flag This insult aroused great public indignation in England, and while peremptory demands for reparation were sent to Spain, a number of war-ships were ordered at once into commission. Among these was the *Raisonné* Spain, after a short hesitation, yielded the British demands, so that war did not come, and the *Raisonné* with other ships was again put out of commission *Difference*—dispute. *Accommodated*—settled *Removed*—transferred *Seventy-four*—i.e., a ship carrying 74 guns. *Guardship*—a ship which remains in harbour and sees that the ships which are not commissioned keep proper watch *Thames*—Dr Mahan has "Medway" here, in his *Life of Nelson* (2 Vols Sampson Low & Co) *Inactive*—idle *For a boy*—because his energies were in danger of being lost through idleness *West Indies*—America. *Master mate*—master's assistant In the Royal Navy the master is an officer who navigates the ship under the orders of the Captain *Dreadnought*—the name of a ship *A practical seaman*—a sailor having some actual experience of life at sea.

*The King's service*—Government service, as we would say. *And a saying*—The grammatical construction is—He returned with a saying *Aft the most honour,* *forward the better man*—‘*Aft*’ means ‘in the hind part of the ship’; ‘*forward*’ means ‘in the fore part of the ship’. In the hind part of the ship was the quarter-deck, the part occupied by the officers, in the front part near the bow was the place for the common sailors. The saying therefore means:—‘The officers get all the honour, although they are really much inferior to the common sailors’. *Disappointed*—not promoted as he expected

[Page 5.] *With no unfriendly intentions*—with the motive of doing him a good: not out of jealousy or malice. *Against*—i.e., not to adopt *Hopeless*—containing no good prospects *Took*—adopted. *Reconciling him to it*—creating in him the desire to continue in it. *Held out*—promised. *Attended well to*—carefully studied *Cutter*—a kind of small light boat carried by a ship of war, having generally ten oars *Decked long-boat*—or ‘launch’ another kind of small boat, but slower and heavier than a cutter, carried by a man-of-war. *Was*—This ought to be ‘were,’ as the ‘cutter’ and ‘long boat’ were different boats Southey, however, is not responsible for this grammatical error, as he has copied this sentence, word for word, from Nelson’s autobiographical note; and Nelson was never good at grammatical composition *Pilot*—an officer who guides the ship in dangerous places *Vessels of that description*—cutters and long boats *The Tower*—The Tower of London, a collection of buildings on the northern banks of the Thames Formerly it was used as a palace and also sometimes as a prison *The Swin Channel*—a channel at the mouth of the Thames *North Foreland*—a promontory of England, forming the N. E. extremity of the Isle of Thanet and of Kent *Down the Swin Channel to the North Foreland*—Here is another grammatical error, adopted from Nelson. The phrase, as it is, would show that the

Swin Channel is connected with the North Foreland, which it is not. *Often*—i. e., in his later life.

Para 6

*Fitting out*—being equipped. *Discovery towards the North Pole*—The discovery of the North Pole has fired the imagination of many a gallant band of Englishmen, some of whom have, however, succeeded in opening up a great part of that undiscovered country. *Service*—expedition *Effective*—able-bodied; capable of performing all the work expected of a full grown experienced sailor *The usual number of boys*—The custom of the day permitted naval captains, as a kind of patronage, to take into the king's service on board their own ships a certain number of lads, as midshipmen or otherwise. *This*—the proposal to take only able-bodied sailors, and no boys. *Deter*—prevent *Soliciting to be received*—applying for admission. *Interest*—influence. With regard to the effect of this 'interest' of relatives upon the promotion of their proteges, Captain Mahan says in his admirable biography of Nelson—"To the young naval officer of a century ago, especially if without political or social influence, it was a weighty advantage to be attached to some one commanding officer in active employment, who by favourable opportunity or through professional friendships could push the fortunes of those in whom he was interested". *Coastswain*—(spelt also 'cockswain'), steersman of a boat. *The Royal Society*—a famous society of England, incorporated by Charles II, for the purpose of promoting Natural Science. It is, to-day one of the most important learned societies in the world, its Fellows or members, having the title of F. R. S. *Hon*—abbreviation of 'Honourable', a title given, in England, to the younger children of earls, and all the children of viscounts and barons, and in India, to members of Council and Judges of the High Court. *Captain Constantine John Phips*, an English navigator, mathematician and active politician, born 1746, died 1792. *Bomb*—a kind of small ship made to carry guns discharg-

ing bombshells *Adapted*—suited. *Dock*—a place where ships are built and repaired. *Secure*—strong.

[Page 6.] *Greenlandmen*—ships engaged in whale-fishing off the coast of Greenland

#### Para 7

*The First Lord of the admiralty*—the highest naval officer in the Kingdom. *Lord Sandwich*—John Montague, earl of Sandwich, was appointed first Lord of the admiralty in 1763. He wrote a book called "Voyage round the Mediterranean". He was a man of dissolute character. Born 1718, died 1792. *Laudable*—praiseworthy. *Solicitude*—anxiety. *Apparatus*—mechanism. *Mop*—bundle of cloth. *Applying a wet mop to the surface*—This was done to cool it and condense the vapour inside into water.

#### Para 8

*About*—near. *Beset*—surrounded. *Hove her through with ice anchors*—dragged her along by pulling at cables fastened to anchors fixed in the ice. An ice-anchor is a large iron hook that is fixed in the ice either to fasten the ship or to pull her along by. *Ranging*—moving. *Opening*—clear passage. *Fine*—pleasant. *Mild*—not very cold. *Clear*—not stormy. *Becalmed*—unable to move owing to there being no wind blowing. *Not a breath*—none at all. *Low*—almost level with the water's surface. *Even*—not undulating. *Ice fields*—masses of ice. *Just cruised over*—there was a very thin layer over it. *Young ice*—ice recently formed. *Closed upon*—surrounded

[Page 7] *Soft*—free from salts.

#### Para 9

*Within less than*—'Within' and 'less than' both mean the same thing—'at less distance than'. *Lengths*—the length of a ship would be the distance from the prow to the stern. *Forced*—sc. by other masses of ice striking against them. *Main yard*—the wooden bar that supports the mainsail. *Squeezing*—i.e., striking. *Quarter*—direc-

tion *Warp*—haul the ships along by means of ropes. *Sawed*—cut with a saw. *Above*—more than *Field*—mass of ice *Would*—The force of 'would' here is that it denotes frequency *Islands*—masses of ice surrounded by water *Incorporated*—made to mix and become a part of *Aggregation*—receiving additional masses of ice *Every hour lessened themselves*—i.e., they were in hourly expectation of being frozen to death.

#### Para 10

*As*—though *Explore*—find out *Open*—i.e., where there were no blocking ice-fields *Singular*—curious; great *Walrus*—a large marine carnivorous mammal of the arctic regions, allied to the seal; also called "Sea-horse" *Has so human-like an expression in its countenance*—so strangely resembles a human being in the cut of its face *None that seems humanity*—The truth of it will probably be doubted by many. Southey's remark is a quick generalisation from the one fact mentioned later on that the wounded walrus showed itself as revengeful as a human being *Dived*—went down under the surface of the water

[Page 8] *Brought up*—called out. *Wrested*—took by force. *Staving*—breaking a hole in.

#### Para 11

*Exposed himself*—so to the danger. *In a more daring manner*—i.e., he was not content with simply dispersing the walruses by making a joint attack upon them *Mid-watch*—from midnight to four o'clock in the morning *Stole*—went away secretly *Taking advantage of*—escaping notice *They were missed*—their absence was known. *The two adventurers*—Nelson and his companion. *Flash-ed in the pan*—failed to discharge the bullet. The *pan* is the iron cavity containing the priming powder, which is ignited by the sparks produced when the flint strikes the iron of the pan. The powder in Nelson's gun was ignited, but the powder in the barrel remained untouched,

so the bullet was not discharged. A 'flash in the pan' is used proverbially to express an unsuccessful attempt. Ammunition—stock of bullets, gunpowder &c. Expended—spent up. Chasm—opening. Preserved his life—The bear could not jump over this chasm; otherwise he would immediately have fallen upon Nelson and torn him to pieces. Do—if you allow me &c. But—only. Butt-end—the thick end of a musket which is pressed against the shoulder when the musket is fired. The consequences of his trespass—the punishment he would receive for his disobedience of orders. Reprimanded—rebuked. Conduct so unworthy &c.—In the military and naval services obedience to the commander's orders is the first requisite. Pouting—protruding

#### Para 12

Chart—a map by which a ship is navigated. From—after. It was called Walden's island, because Walden was the name of the midshipman who was intrusted with that expedition.

[Page 9.] Intelligence—news. Abated—diminished. Hopes—hopes of going back to England safely. Abated the hopes—because they now knew that even an east wind was not likely to clear the way. Where they lay—in the region where their ship then was. Main dependence—strongest hope. Alternative—choice between two courses. Wait the event of the weather upon the ships—wait till more favourable weather ultimately rescues the ship. Betake themselves to the boats—leave the ship alone, and try to escape on the boats. The boats would not require a large opening to go through, and a small opening could easily be cut by boring through the ice. Sacrifice the ships—leave the ships to perish. Forescen—anticipated. Adapted—made suitable. Transport—carry. Emergency—a sudden bad necessity. Whalers—ships engaged in whale fishing. Wintering—passing the winter season. During winter it was impossible to move in any direction, the sea being completely frozen. That dreadful experiment—



passing the winter in the polar regions is called a *dead-ful* experiment, because it had always been followed by fatal consequences—all the people were frozen to death, it is called an *experiment*, because it was more or less a play of chance. *Too often*—so often, each time with such disastrous results, that it could not be tried again. *No time was to be lost*—they must decide upon their course of action at once, or the consequences would be ruinous. *Driven into*—reached. *Shoal*—shallow. *Fathom*—a measure of depth equal to six feet. *They*—the ships. *To which they were fast*—on which they had fixed their anchors. *Take the ground*—This phrase means two different things as applied to the two objects with which it agrees applied to the ships it means—‘run aground; the bottom of the ships touching the ground’, applied to the ice it means—‘become so deep as to reach the bottom of the sea, the sea becoming frozen to its bottom’ *Be lost*—perish. *Driving*—being driven by the current. *Fast*—rapidly. *Preparing*—setting ready; equipping. *Hoisted out*—taken down from their position on the ship. *The fitting began*—they began to provide their boats with sails, provisions, and everything else necessary for the voyage to the coast. *Bread-bags*—bags to hold biscuits. *Desert*—leave. *The lead and line*—the sounding-line, an instrument to measure the depth of the sea. *Sound*—measure the depth of the sea. *Cracks*—breaks, openings

#### Para 13

*Haul*—drag. *Four-oared cutter*—The cutter attached to this ship had only four oars, though the usual number is ten. *Excellently well*—with the calm heroism characteristic of British sailors. *Reconciled to*—not alarmed at. *Had full confidence in*—and therefore readily obeyed them. *Set*—spread out.

[Page 10] *They were not now*. *beset*—i.e., they had made very little progress, since they were first surrounded by ice. *All sail was kept upon them*—they spread out all the sails they had, so as to catch each breath of wind

and move as fast as they could under the circumstances. *Slacked*—became less solid. *Whatever exertions were made*—inspite of any efforts they might make. *If the situation of the ships.....time*—if the ship made no considerable progress till then. *Stay longer by them*—continue in the ships any longer. *Heavy*—deep. *Close*—compact. *Moved something*—made some little progress. *Drifting*—moving; floating. *What advantage had been gained*—how far they had got clear of the ice, and what progress they had made. *Past*—near. *On the morrow*—next morning. *N. N. E.*—north-north-east, the point of the compass halfway between North and North-East. *Struck*—collided against masses of ice. *Shank*—main bar of the anchor. *Bower anchor*—an anchor at the bows. The best bower anchor is that on the right bow. *Made way*—moved on. *Were out at sea*—had reached the open sea. *The great promoter...discovery*—Richard Hakluyt, famous for his books of travel, containing much valuable information in respect of the early colonisation of North America. Born 1553, died 1616.

#### Para 14.

[Page 11] *That*—in order that. *No insect*—no living creatures. *Ice-bergs*—floating masses of ice, practically the same thing as has previously been called 'fields of ice,' and 'islands of ice'. *Lively*—bright and pleasant. *Observatory*—station for studying the stars and planets in order to ascertain the position of the ship. *Latitudes*—i. e., regions; parts of the world. *Loaded*—covered. *Bright appearance*—gleam. *The blink of the ice*—a bright gleam on the horizon caused by reflection from masses of ice. *If indeed anything had been left untried*—they had done all they could under the circumstances, nothing further was possible, and therefore even if the season had been favourable for fresh enterprises, they could not be made—they were beyond human effort. *Wall*—surrounding mass. *Without the smallest...opening*—as one unbroken mass.

## Para 15

*The ships were paid off*—the crew received their pay and were dismissed from the ship *With*—in charge of. *East Indies*—India *In*—as a ship belonging to *Squadron*—fleet. *He was stationed*—that was the duty on which he was placed *Fore top*—the top of the foremast. *At watch and watch*—to keep watch alternately with another set of crew. *In whose watch he was*—who was the officer in charge of his watch. *Rated him as*—gave him the rank of. *Flourid*—red, a sign of good health. *Athletic*—muscular. *Effects*—the enervating influence *Perilous*—dangerous.

[Page 12] *European constitutions*—India is a very hot country, and so people accustomed to cold climates like the Europeans, cannot bear the heat, and sometimes die of diseases like sunstroke, cholera, small-pox &c *The disease*—Most probably the disease was fever. *Baffled all power of medicine*—no medicines could cure it *Was reduced almost to a skeleton*—had become so lean that he had nearly no flesh at all. *The use of his limbs. lost*—for some days he was closely confined to his bed, and was totally unable to walk about. *Hope*—sc. of life. *Never have lived ..shores*—have died on the way. *Was known itself*—had spread over the whole civilized world. *Impressed with a feeling*—a presentiment. *Rise*—gain distinction *My mind was staggered*—I felt a sense of despair *With a view of*—when I reflected upon. *Surmount*—overcome. *Interest*—influence *Reaching the object of my ambition*—realizing my aspirations. *Gloomy*—sad *Reverie*—a protracted reflection, somewhat like a dream. *Overboard*—drowned in the sea, dead *Glow*—hopeful feeling. *Was kindled within me*—I felt. *Presented my king patron*—I came to feel that the people who were to back me up in my profession were my countrymen and my king. *Confiding in*—trusting in; having faith in. *Brave*—encounter.

## Para 16

9 A radiant orb—a bright hope Was suspended in his mind's eyes—he always felt Urged him onward to renown—encouraged him to do brave deeds which brought him glory The mystics—a religious sect who believe that God reveals Himself to their souls when they are absorbed in a sublime state of contemplation. Season of darkness &c—mental dejection; melancholy. 'Darkness' represents the state of the mind when it feels no hope of any thing; 'desertion' represents the feeling of forlornness. Animal spirits—the cheerfulness arising out of bodily health Fail—is lost Represent—call. An actual temptation—the direct interference of the evil one, leading them on to wicked courses. Enthusiasm—cheerfulness. Taken a different direction—filled him with desire for glory by doing heroic deeds. Its essence was the same—at bottom this enthusiasm was the same as that of the mystics. Enfeebled—weak. Depressed—filled with anxiety. Cast this shade over his soul—caused that melancholy. Sunshine—hopefulness. Bore with it a prophetic glory—was infused in him by God. The light which led him on—his noble aspirations which were the incentive to noble deeds Light from heaven—put into him by God

## Page 17.

[Page 18]. Interest—means of rising Controller of the Navy—chief commissioner of the navy board that superintended the building, docking and repairing of ships, and also the transport, victualling, and medical departments This board was abolished in 1836. Acting-lieutenant—officiating lieutenant, the lowest rank of commanding officers With convoy—with merchant vessels under her protection The board—the board of examiners Younker—youngster, young man. Pass a good examination—pass his examination with credit And he had not been deceived—and he did pass his examination with credit. Frigate—a kind of small swift-sailing ship. This class of vessel was in the old days considered

particularly desirable for young officers, being more active than ships-of-the-line, while at the same time more comfortable, and a better school for the forming of an officer, than were the small cruisers. *Then fitting out for Jamaica*—These were the circumstances—Great Britain was then fully embarked in the war with her North American colonies, which ended in their independence, and the course of events was hastening her to the rupture with France and Spain that followed within a year. In this protracted contest the chief scene of naval hostilities was to be the West Indies.

#### Para 18

*Flag-ship*—the ship in which the admiral sails, and which therefore displays his flag. *Brig*—a two-masted vessel with square sails. *Collingwood*—It is interesting to know something of this naval officer who went neck-in-neck with Nelson in the race for glory. In the battle of the First of June (1794) he was flag captain to Admiral Bowyer on board the *Prince*. In 1797 he commanded the *Excellent* at the battle of Cape St. Vincent, and subsequently rose to the rank of vice-admiral. This placed him second in command to Nelson at the battle of Trafalgar, where he was the first to break the enemy's line. When Nelson fell mortally wounded, Collingwood completed the victory and continued in command of the fleet. He was made a peer. For nearly three years he continued the blockade of Cadiz, the Straits of Gibraltar, and the neighbouring coasts, and evinced a perseverance unexampled in the annals of naval warfare. The private character of Collingwood was admirable in every relation of life, affectionate, kindly, just, and heroically brave. Born in 1750, died in 1810.

[Page 14]. *Steward*—the man in charge of the provisions, liquors &c. *Rum*—a kind of wine. *After hold*—the compartment in the hind part of the ship in which stores are kept. *Leaping into the water*—to swim ashore and save themselves. *Powder*—gunpowder. This is

the most dangerous thing during a fire. *Ensued*, followed. *Made post*—appointed post-captain or full captain. A 'Post-captain' is a captain entitled to the name by his post or appointment; as distinguished from commanders whose rank was not that of a captain, but who were called captain by courtesy. *Merchantman*—trading ship. *Sheathed with wood*—protected all round with a casing of planks. This was done in the case of ships whose timber had become somewhat damaged. *Taken into the service*—made into a war ship

#### Para 19

*Stormed*—captured by making a sudden assault. *Register ships*—Spanish plate ships and galleons. They were called register ships because they were registered when they obtained permission to trade with the Spanish colonies. *Under its guns*—This was the reason why they could all the more easily capture those ships, which could not flee, as they would then have been fired at. *Quintals*—hundredweights. *Quicksilver*—mercury. *Piastre*—a Spanish coin worth about three rupees. *Reward*—booty. *Characteristic*—well worthy of his noble character. *Missed*—failed to receive. *It ever excited .* *vacation*—he at any time felt sorry for it, in the least.

#### Para 20

*Good interest*—powerful influence in his favour. *Serviceable*—of use in winning him promotion. *That rank*—the rank of Captain. *Which brought all the honours...reach*—from which, if he had the merit, he could gradually rise to the highest eminence. *Master of his profession*—an able Captain. *Sail*—ships. *Transports*—ships carrying soldiers. *Reputed*—which people calculated to be. *St. Domingo*—the capital of the Spanish part of the island of Hayti in the West Indies

Page 15 *General Dalling*—the British governor of Jamaica. *Port Royal*—a sea-port on the south-east coast of Jamaica. *Mustered*—collected. *Inadequate*—insufficient. *Resist*—fight. *Of his learning to speak French*—of his

being taken a prisoner to France *Equal to*—qualified for. *Formidable armament*—terrible force. *Execute*—carry out.

#### Para 21

*Lake Nicaragua*—a lake in the province of that name in the extreme south of North America *The cities of Grenada and Leon*—both in the province of Nicaragua, Leon being a few miles north of Grenada. *Thus cut off the communication of the Spaniards &c*—(1) by controlling the route from the Pacific to the Atlantic by way of the Isthmus, and (2) by keeping naval detachments at each end of this strip *The two seas*—the Pacific and the Atlantic *A work more important in its consequences* . *power*—This is probably an exaggerated estimate of the consequences. The principal effect of such a line of navigation would be the bringing of the western coast of North and South America into easy communication with Europe *The plan*—General Dalling's plan of holding the Nicaragua Lake and cutting off the communication between the northern and southern colonies of Spain *Discontents*—the people were discontented with the Spanish Government, and hence it was expected that they would rise in favour of the English *The Nuevo Reyno, Popayan, Peru*—all Spanish possessions in South America *Sanguine*—excessively hopeful *One part*—in South America *Another*—North America.

[Page 16] *Adventure themselves*—This is curious English 'Adventure' is not used as a verb now The phrase here means—'to fight'. *Beaten*—defeated. *A climate*—an unhealthy climate *Which would do the enemy's work*—which would kill large numbers of their men.

#### Para 22.

*Native*—native of Honduras *They*—the natives. *Intents*—object *Enslaving*—capturing them to sell them as slaves. *Auhile*—a short time. *Ventured down*—was bold enough to appear on the coast. *Confiding, in his*

*Knowledge of one of the party*—relying for escape. upon his acquaintance with a certain man of the expedition *By his means*—with his intervention. *Conciliated*—converted into allies. *Brought in*—induced to enter into friendly relations. *Suampy*—marshy. *Unwholesome*—unhealthy. *Deplorable*—sad. *Mosquito shore*—the shores of the Mosquito district, a maritime district lying along part of the northern and eastern shore of Honduras, and forming a part of the republic of Nicaragua *Indian*—The natives of America and the adjacent islands were called Indians. *Nelson's services were to terminate*—he was to make over charge. *Turn back*—go away. *So much was to be done*—a great portion of the work remained to be done *Carry*—lead *Embarked*—put in boats *Craft*—a kind of boat. *The latter end of the dry season*—the month of April. *Worst*—most unhealthy. *Low*—ie, containing very little water. *Rapids*—waterfalls *Contend with*—struggle against.

[Page 17] *Bunt*—the heaviest part. *Stand aloof*—remain idle. *Never accustomed to stand aloof*—always willing to work hard. *Rely upon themselves*—work independently *Heat of the sun*—they were in the tropical regions. *White*—covered with sand. *Shoals*—sandbanks. *Close*—dense. *Prevent...air*—obstruct the wind.

### Para 23

*Outpost*—a station at some distance from the main body of an army. *Battery*—collection of guns. *Swivels*—guns fixed in sockets so that they can be easily turned in any direction. *Manned with*—in charge of. *Commanded*—overlooked. *Beach*—shore *In his own phrase*—as he called it. *Boarded*—captured by force. *To 'board'* a vessel is a phrase of naval warfare, meaning 'to enter a vessel by force in combat'. *Despard*—Edward Marcus Despard, was an Irishman who early entered upon a military life, and became an able engineer. At the close of the American War he served in the West Indies, where he distinguished himself by an expedition on the



Spanish main in conjunction with Nelson For his services there he was made Lieutenant-Colonel. In 1784 he was appointed English superintendent at Honduras, but his conduct causing him to be suspended, he demanded an investigation This was refused, and he became violent against the government, and was sent to prison. On his release he tried to seduce the soldiery, and having collected some followers, held secret meetings at alehouses, to which no persons were admitted without taking a treasonable oath At these assemblies, it is said, various plans were devised for the murder of the king, and, at last, it was determined to make the attack when His Majesty went to the Parliament House. The plot being discovered, he and several other persons were arrested, and, being found guilty, were hanged, in 1803.

#### Para 24

[Page 18] *Putrid*—rotten. *A similar fate*—being bitten to death by a snake. *Hammock*—a bed suspended by ropes. *Slung*—suspended *Monitory lizard*—or monistor, so called because it was supposed to give warning of approaching danger In this case, however, it did give notice of danger—the approach of a snake which coiled up at Nelson's feet *The reptile*—the lizard. *What it indicated*—that it indicated the approach of a snake. *Of another kind*—he escaped from the poison of a snake *Manchineel*—a west Indian tree, the juice and fruit of which are poisonous. *Inflict a lasting injury upon his constitution*—impair his health for ever.

#### Para 25

*Below*—to the south of *Then navigation back*—the return voyage, the voyage up the stream *Carried by assault*—stormed *Observe*—go through *Formalities*—regular proceedings *Fatigue was more to be dreaded than the enemy*—the people were already very much fatigued and therefore more fatigue would kill them. *Set in*—commenced *Held out*—resisted, not surrendered. *Disease would.....invaders*—they would have been able

to keep their castle, as the belligerents would have died in large numbers from the diseases that were attendant upon the rainy season *Sunk under it*—could not bear the fatigue. *The victims of unusual exertion*—who had been put to very great hardships. *Relief*—rest and comfort.

[Page 19.] *Contribute to*—help in. *Nothing which could* ...sick—no comforts for invalids. *The preservation of those.....unaffected*—no food for the rest *Putrefying*—rotting *Engendered pestilence*—caused widespread sickness *Erect*—build. *The contagion had become so general*—almost everybody was suffering from disease. *Garrison duty*—the duty of protecting the castle from attack *Orderly men*—men appointed to attend upon officers, carry orders, or perform similar non-military offices. *Assist*—tend. *More than the living could perform*—there were not men enough for that even *Tossed*—thrown. *Gallinazos*—South American name for the large vultures more commonly called turkey buzzards *Carrion-birds*—birds that feed upon dead bodies. *Begin their work*—proceed to devour the bodies. *War against nature*—struggle against disease and death *Proof against*—not liable to be hurt by *Retain*—hold. *Baleful*—injurious. *Complement*—full number of men. *Took to their beds*—became so ill that they could not leave their beds.

#### Para 26

[Page 20] *Prevailing*—which was very common *Sloop*—a kind of one-masted vessel *Disorder*—disease, namely dysentery. *Cot*—bedstead *Partial amendment*—slight recovery *Captain (afterwards Admiral) Cornwallis*—a brother of Lord Cornwallis who came out to India as Governor-General. *Miserable state*—very bad state of health.

#### Para 27

*In this state*—though he was still very weak. *As if*—it might almost be supposed—The difference between the two is that the former phrase “as if”

introduces what is not a fact, the latter suggests that what is said might be taken to be in part true. *The North Seas*—the Baltic, an unhealthy place. *Try his constitution*—see if his health could stand the effects of another bad climate. *Asperity*—bitterness *Evinces*—shows. *Deeply he resented*—strongly dissatisfied he was with. *Mode of conduct*—this conduct on the part of the naval authorities, who ought to have taken into consideration the health of one of their ablest officers *Detrimental to the service*—because it would make able officers discontented, so that they would not have the heart to perform their duties well *The armed Neutrality*—a league of the Northern powers, Russia, Sweden, and Denmark, headed by Russia, to defend, if necessary by force of arms, the principle that no merchandise in neutral ships should be liable to capture by vessels belonging to nations at war with each other.

[Page 21]—*Elsinore*—in Denmark. *Sent—i.e.*, sent a messenger *Served*—employed, i.e., in bombarding the ports of Denmark *Soundings*—depths of the sea in various places on the coast *In after times*—Southey is thinking of the successful bombardment of Copenhagen *Still—i.e.*, in spite of the improvements *Had taught her to run away*—had given her some of their own cowardly spirit, as was evident from the fact that she was very good at running in a straight line, good for nothing else. *A good sailer*—she could not be made to sail in all directions with equal facility.

#### Para 28.

*The Downs*—a celebrated roadstead between Deal and the Goodwin Sands, in England *Heavy gale*—a storm *Drove*—were set in motion *Store-ship*—a ship carrying provisions *Athwart hawse*—across the stem. The 'hawse' is that part of the bows where there are holes for the cables to pass through. *Drove*—be dashed *The Goodwin Sands*—a dangerous range of sandbanks which stretch for ten miles along the coast of Kent They derive their

name from Earl Godwin to whom they belonged before they were inundated by the sea. Deal—a town on the coast of Kent, 8 miles north-east of Dover, opposite the Goodwin Sands. The Deal pilots and boatmen are famous for their intrepidity. Hence the use of the word "even". Get on board—to take Nelson on a boat from the shore to the ship. For—on payment of. During the height of the tempest—at a time when the storm was the severest. Bousprit—the large spar or boom projecting over the bow or stern of a vessel.

[Page 22]—Belaid up—fall ill. *There appeared to him an indelicacy in*—he did not consider it proper to. - *His successor*—Admiral Keppel, who became First Lord of the admiralty in March 1782.

#### Para 29

Cruise—a sailing to and fro in search of the enemy's ships. Schooner—a small vessel of two masts. Certificate—a letter of safe conduct. *Most valuable supply*—because want of fresh provisions is the chief cause of scurvy. *The scurvy*—a disease characterized by livid spots and general bodily exhaustion. Raging on board—prevalent among the ships' crew. In memory of—as a memento. *Now that the fame of Nelson...name*—we now feel interested to know everything concerning Nelson, because Nelson is now counted as one of the greatest of England's heroes. Relic—something preserved in remembrance, and held as almost sacred.

#### Para 30

*A very pretty job*—playfully for—'a most difficult task'. *This late season*—the approach of winter. *Was far advanced*—it was towards the close of October. Frozen to the yards—a strong way of saying, 'covered with snow'. Prize-money—money obtained from captured ships. *But the West Indies is the station for honour*—Nelson's reply is very characteristic. Making money as a motive of action, he always regarded with disdain, although he was not insensible to the value of money. A

year later he wrote to a friend "True honour, I hope, predominates in my mind far above riches" *Detachment*—portion *Rodney's victorious fleet*—Admiral Rodney had signally defeated the French fleet near Dominico in the West Indies on April 12th of this year (1782). *Ask for*—apply for the command of. *It was most likely &c.*, —; a honour could be expected. *Parted with him*—gave Nelson leave to go.

#### Para 31

[Page 23]—*Professional merit*—his merit as an able Captain. *Prince William Henry*—third son of George III who afterwards became William IV. *Naval tactics*—the mode of carrying on war at sea with success. *The merest boy of a captain*—a very youthful officer. This use of a definitive possessive to denote a noun in apposition is generally contemptuous, Cf. "the devil of a printer" *Lank*—loose. *Unpowdered*—It was at this time the fashion to sprinkle the hair with white or grey powder, and keep it hanging down behind in a tail *Hessian tail*—pigtail. Pigtails were called Hessian tails because they were worn by the Hessian (Prussian) mercenaries employed by the British Government, and so became familiar to the English who, after a time, adopted this method of wearing the hair. *Nor could I imagine who he was &c.*—altogether he did not at all look like a captain of the navy. The student will remember that Nelson's great adversary, Napoleon, looked much the same His short stature and lean body won him the name of "Little corporal". *Address*—bearing in conversation. *Irresistibly pleasing*—fascinating. *No common being*—an extraordinary man.

#### Para 32

*Preliminaries*—first drafts *Peace*—the peace with France was signed at Versailles on January 20th 1782 *Iniquitous*—unjust, wicked. *Turning them over*—transferring them. *Be attached to*—love.

[Page 24]—*Enter for*—serve in. *Presented at Court*—introduced to the king, George III. *Lincoln's Inn*—one

of the places in England for the study of Law. *Chambers*—apartments occupied by lawyers at the Inns of Court. *Iron bound coat*—stiff naval uniform *Putting himself at ease in*—putting on a looser and more comfortable dress.

## CHAPTER II.

### IN THE WEST INDIES.

#### Para 1

[Page 25.] *Closed*.—concluded. *Without a fortune*.—I have gained no money from my conquests. *'Fortune'* here means a sum of money large enough to make the possessor a wealthy man. *Not a speck*—no blot. *There is not...character*—I have throughout behaved with the utmost honesty *True honour*—the ambition to win honour. *Predominates*—is stronger than *Riches*—i.e., the desire to grow wealthy *Leeward Islands*—a group of islands extending from Porto Rico to Dominica and comprising the British islands of Anguilla St Christopher's, Antigua, Dominica, Monserrat, and the Virgin group. They were so called from their situation in a voyage from the ports of Spain to Porto Bello *Cruiser*—an armed ship that sails to and fro for protecting commerce. *Peace establishment*—the reduced list of officers that is kept in times of peace *Him*—i.e. Nelson *Happy were they whose lot &c*—because Nelson was a very kind officer *Aloft*—up to the top of a mast *Going a race*—I want to compete with you as to who should get to the top first. *Masthead*—top of the mast This must not be understood to mean the highest point of the whole mast but a wooden platform at the highest point of the lowest of the three divisions into which each mast of a large ship of war was divided *How*—as well as *Would say*—used to say. *Any person*—This is connected with 'who fancied &c' *Pitied*—pitied for his foolishness in supposing that going up a mast was difficult or dangerous.

[Page 26] *School room*—the part of the ship where the young sailors received lessons in the art of navigation. *They were pursuing studies*—they were not wasting their time but studying. *At noon*—This is the time of day when the altitude of the sun is taken at sea by means of an astronomical instrument called the 'quadrant,' in order to determine the part of the world where the ship is, by finding out the latitude and longitude. *A visit of ceremony*—a formal call, such as one on a king or prince. *Governor*—British Governor. *Barbadoes*—the most eastern of the British West India islands. *I make it a rule*—it is my invariable practice. *The good company*—notable persons. *Look up to*—depend upon.

#### Para 2

*At this time*—just after the close of the American War. *Our islands*—the British West India islands. *Register of their ships*—the permission their ships had obtained of trading with the British possessions. *Which*—i.e. the licence. *While they were British subjects*—previous to the war of American Independence. *The Navigation Act*—By the Navigation Laws, first established by Cromwell, but continued under the restored monarchy without serious modification until 1794, trade with the colonies was reserved to vessels built in Great Britain or her dependencies, and manned in three-fourths part by British subjects. The chief object and advantage of the law were conceived to be, not merely a monopoly of the trade, but the fostering of the British merchant service as a nursery of seamen, upon whom, in time of war, the navy could draw. The military strength of the Empire was thought to be involved in the enforcement of the Navigation Act. *Made themselves foreigners*—so by asserting their independence. *Broken the ties of blood and language*—made themselves enemies of the English, in spite of their being English by birth and race, speaking the same language as the English. *Provoked*—namely, by the English Parliament trying to tax them illegally. *Unhappily*—unfortunately. Southey is of

opinion that the Americans are sure to suffer for their independence, because they were not fit for it when they asserted it. *Ties*—relationships *They should derive .... ties*—they must not take advantage of their race relationship with England to trade with her contrary to laws. *As foreigners they were to be treated*—sc. by not being allowed to trade with British possessions. *Admitted to any kind of intercourse*—allowed to have any sort of dealings *The loyalists*—certain American colonists who settled in Nova Scotia in 1783 in order that they might be subjects of the British crown rather than citizens of the new American republic. They were no doubt partly actuated by the desire to participate in the commercial privileges secured to British subjects, and refused to forego them by the Navigation Act *Entirely done away*—no regard is paid to them *Embroidered*—entangled. *Become the carriers of these colonies*—supply ships to convey merchandise to and from the ports of these colonies

[Page 27.] *Have possession of them*—conquer them This supposition of Nelson's is based on the principle of conquest following in the wake of commerce. *Martinico*—an island in the West Indies then, as now, belonging to France. *Molasses*—the syrup produced from sugar in the process of making *Round and round*—go back home and then come again to these islands and go to Martinico &c *The loyalist cannot do this*—the people of Nova Scotia, as British subjects, would not be allowed to trade with Martinico, which was a French colony, but the Americans could do this according to the commercial treaty of 1778 between France and the United States *Must sell a little dearer*—having comparatively a smaller market, he cannot carry on an equally successful trade *Residents here*—inhabitants of this place. *By connection*—by belonging to the same party that had declared their independence in the United States. *By interest*—i.e. because it is more profitable to them to be so. *They are as great rebels*—at heart they have the desire to rise against the British Government, same as the people of the United States did;



want of strength alone checks them from showing their rebellious spirit.

### Para 3

*Separate*—disperse in several directions *Anchorage*—a place convenient for ships to cast anchor *Inquiries concerning wood and water*—gathering of information about supplies of wood and water *The commander-in-chief*—Sir Richard Hughes *Attend to*—take steps to protect *Respected*—not violated, enforced *Appearing to him to be*—in his opinion was. *Intent*—the intention of Government *He had no particular orders*—he had received nothing beyond general instructions That means that Government had not expressly told him to protect British commerce by enforcing the Navigation Act *The Admiralty*—the head of the naval department of Government. *Any acts of parliament*—sc. like the Navigation Act The last portion of this remark shows that Sir Richard had no knowledge of the existence of the Navigation Act, he thought it was some Act only very recently passed. *Included in the statutes of the Admiralty*—was part of the navy code *Every captain was furnished*—The Captains are the officers in whom the duty of enforcing naval laws is vested—a sort of executive of the navy. *Carried into execution*—enforced *He had never seen the book*—This remark of Sir Richard's speaks volumes of his signal incompetency as a responsible naval officer *Abroad*—to distant parts *Other purpose*—namely, the protection of British commerce. *To be made a show of*—mere display of British prowess.

### Para 4

*Co operated with*—worked with; helped. That is, in enforcing the Navigation Act *Custom houses*—offices where the taxes on merchandise are paid *Were informed*—formal notice was served upon them *Seized*—captured. *Condemned*—ordered to pay a fine *The Boreas*—Nelson's ship. *Nevis*—an island of the Leeward Group.

[Page 28.] *Deeply laden*—with a large cargo on board. *Island Colours*—the British flag. *Their proper flag*—the American national flag. *Judge of the admiralty*—a Judge appointed to decide cases arising out of the capture of vessels. *Hull and cargo*—the vessels as well as the merchandise they carried. *Raised a storm*—was strongly resented by all. *Planters*—people who were engaged in the cultivation of land, a section of the colonists. *Presently filled*—soon collected. *Carrying on*—conducting. *Cause—suit* *Whose flag was at that time in the roads*—i.e., who was present on the spot. 'Flag' or 'flagship' is the admiral's ship. 'Roads' is 'harbour'. *Stood neutral*—sided neither with Nelson nor with the American Captains.

#### Para 5

*Abettors*—supporters. An 'abettor' is one who encourages another to do something bad or illegal. *With defensive law*—to find grounds to escape capture; they wanted to prosecute Nelson and his co-adjutors for illegal arrest—to act on the offensive as well. *Marines*—soldiers who fight on board ship. This word is different from 'mariner' which simply means a sailor. *He*—Nelson. *Secure*—capture. *Masters*—American officers. *Going ashore*—landing. *Those persons*—those of the American crew. *Depositions*—evidence. See ll 5-8 above. *Declared*—now veered round and declared. *Given their testimony*—made that confession. *Under bodily fear*—on coercion. *The time—during which they were examined* *The mariners whom he had sent to secure .... whole of the time*—This sentence contains the two grounds upon which they were going to prosecute Nelson—(1) that his agents had kept some of the American officers in illegal confinement, by not allowing them to land, and (2) that the confession made by some of the American crew was made on coercion, and was therefore invalid. They proved the coercion by swearing to what was absolutely false; and they claimed £40 000 as damages. *Rascally*—fraudulent; mischievous. *The party*—the Americans. *Suggested*

*this story*—concocted these charges to be advanced as grounds for their claim for damages *The sentry at the cabin door*—There is always a sentry at the cabin-door of naval captains, he was not stationèd there for the purpose of coercing the witnesses The Americans twisted this into the falsehood they swore to *Made no scruple of*—felt no-hesitation in *Laid their damages*—claimed £10,000 as compensation for their losses *Keep close on board*—not to leave the ship. *Find bail*—find persons who would bind themselves to pay that sum, if Nelson failed to appear in court on the day of trial. *Marshal*—in America, a civil officer in each judicial district, corresponding to the sheriff of an English county *Address*—here means 'skill'. *Taken*—arrested *Such*—so full of rage *Been cast for the whole sum*—lost his case in the trial, and made to pay the whole sum claimed as damages

#### Para 6

[Page 29] *Restraint*—the being obliged to confine himself to his ship *I shall live to be envied*—a day will come when people will covet my greatness. *To that point*—to rise to an enviable position. *Direct my course*—make my efforts The metaphor is taken from seafaring 'Point' in the metaphor means a point of the compass.

#### Para 7

*Duress*—confinement, restraint *Detained*—which had been kept under arrest by Nelson's orders *Ships*—American ships *Under a protection*—with a letter of safe conduct The Judge gave him a written certificate declaring it criminal for anybody to arrest him that day. *For the day*—i.e. he was exempted from arrest for that day alone This does not mean that he was to be arrested next day, but that if he fell into the hands of the marshall on any subsequent day, the judge could grant him no protection The judge had granted him immunity from arrest for one day, for other days it was his own lookout to save himself *Called upon*—sc by

the prosecution. *Take*—avail of. *That opportunity*—the opportunity of Nelson's having gone ashore to attend the trial. *Indemnify him*—compensate him for losses *Violate* disobey. *President*—president of the council He was the richest and most influential man upon that island *No man was a greater sufferer*—Mr Herbert's losses were the heaviest. *By the measures which Nelson had pursued*—i.e. by the capture of the American vessels. This measure greatly damaged Mr. Herbert's trade. *Offered*—promised. *Bail*—surety. *Counsel of the different islands*—barristers sent by the different islands of the Leeward Group to protect their interest *Deputation*—special authority *Explicit*—clear. *Clear*—uncomplicated *Pleaded his own cause so well*—defended himself so ably.

### Para 8

*During ... business*—when this affair was proceeding. *Memorial*—petition; appeal. *At the expense of the crown*—i.e. by the Government advocate; his costs for the suit should be paid by Government *The Register Act*—The Register Act, passed in 1786, enacted that all vessels should have their names, and the names of the ports to which they belonged conspicuously painted on the stern, and that registers should be taken out mentioning the owners' names. No ship built in the United States was to be registered except by special order of the Privy Council

[Page 30] *Treasury*—the ministry The 'ministry' is here called the 'Treasury' because the First Lord of the Treasury is generally the head of the ministry Hence, even to this day, the benches in the House of Commons occupied by the supporters of the ministry are called the 'treasury benches' *Transmitted thanks*—sent the acknowledgments of government *Protecting the commerce*—The old theory of trade was that the commerce of a country could best be promoted by rigorously excluding all foreigners from competing in it. *Known*

*all*—i.e. known the whole truth *In that quarter*—i.e. on the commander-in-chief *Hurt*—offended, disappointed Nelson was very sensitive to neglect *Risk of fortune*—danger of being ruined *Sent out of the service*—dismissed. *Notice taken*—recognition. *What I had done*—my services. *It*—the service done. *Neglected me*—taken no notice of one who really performed the service, namely myself *Stand forward*—take a prominent part in any measure *Have nothing to accuse myself of*—am quite calm, my conscience is quite free.

### Para 9.

*Harassing uncertainties of law*—the painful suspense as to which party would win in the suit. *Wooring*—making his addresses to *Neice*—sister's daughter. *The President*—Mr. Herbert *Widow*—Her first husband had died after one year of the marriage, leaving a son *If I did not find*—certainly I found *That great little man &c*—Nelson. *Partiality*—fondness *Mild*—gentle. *Winning*—attractive *Whose heart was easily susceptible of attachment*—who was in the habit of falling in love very quickly This has been explained as due to a peculiarity of his mental constitution which imperatively demanded an ideal to serve as an object of worship Much of it was no doubt due to an ardent imagination which rapidly filled up defects in attractive objects, so as to make them supply the place of that ideal. *Imperious necessity*—urgent reasons.

[Page 31] *Subduing his inclinations*—restrain his passion *Found no such imperious necessity... .. inclinations*—in plain words 'thought of marrying her' *Twice before*—Once when in Canada on board the *Albemarle*, Nelson fell desperately in love with a Canadian girl, to whom he made an offer of marriage, from which he was with difficulty deterred by a friend His impressionable fancy was again taken by an attractive young Englishwoman, the daughter of a clergyman named Andrews, living at St. Omer. It seems that this lady

rejected his offer of marriage. *Withheld*—checked. *By his own desire*—Prince Henry had asked Nelson to wait for his arrival. *Give away the bride*—It is usually the bride's father that "gives away" the girl in marriage. If he is not present some relation or friend does the office. *Disinherit her*—bequeath no part of his property to her. *Let him profit by an act of injustice*—allow him to enjoy the property which ought justly to go to another.

#### Para 10.

*Ornaments*—officers who have conferred distinction on the service. He refers to Nelson himself. *It is a national loss &c*—The author of this remark evidently believes that the entanglements of married life have a prejudicial effect upon public servants. Southey has rightly pointed out the error in such a judgment. Domestic love, far from diminishing the utility of a man of merit, makes him all the more useful. *The man was rightly estimated*—he was quite right in believing Nelson to be gifted with extraordinary qualities. *Of the true heroic stamp*—really noble.

#### Para 11

*Scandalous*—wicked ; shameful. *Contractors*—people who undertake to supply articles needed for the naval service. *Prize-agents*—persons appointed to sell prizes on behalf of the captors. *Left with the command*—made the senior commanding officer of that station. *Quing*—due. *Original vouchers*—papers showing how much the contractors actually paid for the goods they supplied. These documents are required by Government as a guarantee against fraud on the part of the contractors. *At the market price*—at the price for which they could have been sold in the open market. Nelson suspected that the contractors had paid far too high prices for the goods and got a corresponding high commission from those who sold them. *To produce vouchers would not have been convenient*—because they would very possibly be in the possession of the officer who had ordered the goods, and that

officer would probably have gone away when the time for payment came *Abuses*—frauds *Forms*—procedure *With his eyes open*—fully aware of the evil *Originating in fraudulent intentions*—that was carried on with the intention to deceive

#### Para 12

[Page 32] *Antigua*—another of the Leeward Islands *We're privy to*—knew of. *Shrewd*—cunning *Sensible*—prudent This they showed by disclosing their own interested motives; for otherwise they would not have been believed. *Affect*—pretend. *To be actuated by a sense of justice*—to show that it was pure love of justice that had led them to make these disclosures *Percentage upon*—a certain portion of *So much as*—the total amount. *Infamously*—shamefully. *Check*—guarantee against fraud *A thing was always worth what it would bring*—i.e., if an article was sold at an abnormally high price, that article was really worth that price. The price was not calculated according to any settled principles of political economy; there was no idea of a fair rate of profit *Signing vouchers for each other*—Among the vouchers required were papers signed by a third person (a merchant) who professed to certify that the articles supplied to government had been bought at the market price, but as the merchants, required to certify this, took it for granted that the articles in question were sure to have been sold at their real value, they signed the vouchers as a matter of course without a moment's thought. *Peculators*—cheaters *Powerful*—influential *Impeding*—preventing *Raising prejudices against Nelson*—creating a bad opinion about him

#### Para 13

*Had nearly service*—caused him almost to resign his appointment *Fatal*—extremely unhealthy. *Imputable to*—due to. *Suffered*—allowed *Hurricane months*—Fearful hurricanes sweep over the West Indies islands during the months from June to September, which is the wet season

*Confined him to English Harbour*—made it impossible for him to make any tours of inspection, so that he was obliged to stay in English Harbour (the name of a seaport in the Leeward Islands).

[Page 31] *Cudgelling*—a kind of sport akin to boxing  
*Theatricals*—dramatic performances. *Employ their attention*—give them something to do and think about

Para 14

*Consumptive*—suffering from consumption. *Preca-ri-ous*—uncertain. *Rare*—cold and chilly. *Wet*—rainy  
*Our*—i.e., of England *Ungentle*—cheerless and unhealthy  
*The Nore*—in England. *Slop and receiving ship*—a ship used for keeping sailors' clothes and bedding, and for extra sailors not yet appointed to any particular ship  
*Neglect*—unintentional oversight. *Ungrateful*—in which good service finds no recognition. *Wait upon*—see.

Para 15.

*In his present state of feeling*—while he was so indignant. *Little foreseeing how deeply.....at stake*—Nelson's friend was simply actuated by the desire to benefit Nelson, he did not then know that the same Nelson would afterwards become the saviour of England from the grasping ambition of Napoleon. Southey means that had Nelson then actually resigned, England would probably have been subdued by Bonaparte. *Lord Howe*—the First Lord of the admiralty. *In town*—i.e., in London  
*Propriety of his conduct*—sc. in the speculation affair, mentioned in paragraph 12 above. *Levee*—what we call *dunbar*.

Para 16

[Page 31] *Prejudices had been in like manner*. *Henry*—Prince William Henry too was out of favour with the court in consequence of certain unfavourable reports that people had maliciously made to Government, all of which were as unfounded as those in Nelson's case. *Nothing is wanting.....truth*—if the nation had not been led astray by false reports about your character, you would have be-



come the universal favourite. *Much to the contrary*—many lies about your character. *Dispersed*—circulated. *Not flattery*—but a frank representation of the truth about him. *His Royal Highness*—Prince William Henry. Members of the royal family are styled His or Her Royal Highness. *Court martial*—a court consisting of military or naval officers for the trial of military or naval offences, here, 'a departmental decision' *Point*—question ; subject. *He*—that officer *Unquestionably*—without doubt. *Wrong*—and therefore he must have lost the case. *While he supported his own character and authority*—while he showed that he had done nothing to be tried by a court-martial. It was evidently against the Prince that this officer wanted to bring some charge *Injurious*—brought great loss to the officer, for he must have been defeated. *Deserving*—able. *You are parted*—the dispute between yourself and that officer is happily over *Presume*—venture *He*—that officer. *Serve him*—help him, promote his interests. *There only wants this to place view*—this is all that is required to make your conduct entirely praiseworthy when judged by the highest standard. *None of us are*—'None' is the contraction of 'not one' and therefore requires a singular verb *Failings*—faults. *His*—that officer's fault *Hasty*—rash ; thoughtless *That*—that fault *Put into competition with* . officer—when considered along with his merits as an able officer. *Be taken in the scale against him*—outweigh his merits. *Of more consequence in the state*—more influential in official quarters. *Disinterested*—one who has no selfish objects of his own to gain *A man who &c.*—He is referring to himself *I am interested only*—if I have any selfish object to gain it is This is in effect declaring himself to be disinterested. It is put in that way for the sake of modesty.

#### Para 17

*Mr Rose*—He was then the Secretary of the Treasury.  
*Mr Pitt*—the Prime Minister

[Page 35] *Sir Charles Middleton*—Controller of the Navy *Put into a proper train to be... future—i.e.,*

arrangements were made to prevent the recurrence of such frauds. Step—measure to detect and prevent these frauds.

### Para 18

Meaning—intending. *To lose him thus unnecessarily*—that he should go anywhere except where he was ordered on duty. Affections=complaints He had been given over—the doctors had pronounced his case hopeless Thus cheered—gladdened by your visit. Bereaved of—separated from. Infirmities—weakness Last—live There could be no reply—i.e., he could not but consent to stay. Farming—cultivating. The glebe—land attached to the parsonage. As if.....wearying himself—i.e., for the sake of exercise. Coursing—hunting hares with hounds Upon the full cock—with the cock raised to its full height In this condition a gun is ready to be fired, and goes off, if the trigger is pulled by design or accident. Guns are therefore often, to prevent accident, carried at half cock, that is, with the cock half raised, in which condition they are not liable to accidental discharge.

[Page 36] Board—capture. Let fly—fire suddenly. Fouling-piece—a light gun used for shooting birds. Not extraordinary—i.e., to be expected. Among...life—because Nelson was very bad at shooting birds In shooting birds he fired in the same way as he fired at enemies in a battle, and nobody can shoot birds in that way.

### Para 19

Thus—in amusement alone. Ruffle—disturb. Pestered—troubled, annoyed. Leave me in the lurch—desert me in an unpleasant position. The expression is taken from the game of cribbage in which a player left far behind by an adversary is said to be left in the lurch Consequence—importance. Heard lately enough—He is referring here to the articles and books that were written in defence of the navigation laws in answer to Adam Smith and others who attacked them and advocated free trade. Take my person—arrest me, Six pence—even

a slight sacrifice *I would not give it—i.e.*, I am ready to undergo prosecution. *Abruptly*—without giving previous notice of their approach *They had made her repeatedly declare &c*—That was done to make the presentation of the notice legal A notice is not duly presented if it is given to the wrong man, whereas if given to any adult member of the family it is so *Wit*—something like a summons. *In high spirits*—in great joy. *Glee*—joy. *In some measure*—partly. *Subsided*—became less through lapse of time. *Affront*—insult *Trifled with*—made a fool of *I'll*—I will—'will' showing determination.

[Page 37.] *To this he expected to be driven*—his idea was that he would receive no satisfactory reply and that he would really have to leave the country. *Quieted*—calmed, satisfied.

#### Para 20

*Disquietude*—anxiety. *At ease*—absolutely free from anxiety. *Not being a man of fortune*=poverty. *Rust in indolence*—lose the use of his faculties through want of employment. *Armament*—here, military preparation. *The dispute concerning Nootka Sound*—In 1789 the Spaniards seized the English settlement on Nootka Sound, a bay of the North Pacific, which very nearly led to war with Spain, which was however averted by mutual concessions *Lord Chatham*—eldest brother of William Pitt *Coolness*—indifference, grudge. Nelson called this coolness a "difference of opinion". *Certainly sufficient reason*—One cannot say for certain what this reason was; but it seems it was the fact of Nelson's siding with Prince William Henry, who was, at that time, out of favour with the court.

[Page 38] *On the eve of*—on the point of being engaged in The winter of 1792 was marked by the rapid progress in France of the political distemper which was soon to culminate in the worst excesses of the Revolution The quick succession of symptoms, each more alarming than the other,—the suspension of the royal power at the tu-

multious bidding of a mob, the September massacres, the abolition of monarchy, the aggressive character of the National Convention shown by the decrees of November, 19, (which extended the succour of France to all people who should wish to recover their liberty) and December, 15, (which announced, in the most explicit terms, its purpose to overthrow all existing governments in countries where the Republican armies could penetrate)—roused the apprehensions of England, increased still further by the growing popular effervescence in other countries than France. Nelson was appointed to the "Agamemnon" on the 30th of January 1793. Within the preceding fortnight Louis XVI. had been beheaded, and the French ambassador ordered to leave England. On February 1, 1793, two days after Nelson's appointment, the Republic declared war against Great Britain and Holland. *Revolutionary war*—the War of the French Revolution. *Cockle-boat*—a small boat, more usually called a "cockle shell" or "cock boat." *Dry*—formal. *Mortification*—disappointment.

### CHAPTER III.

#### FIRST SERVICE IN THE MEDITERRANEAN.

##### Para 1.

[Page 39.] *One of his midshipmen*—We do not know much of this midshipman, except that he was a Norfolk lad (like Nelson himself), the son of a strong Whig who had shown sympathy with the French during the first days of the Revolution. *Bear in mind*—remember and constantly act upon. *Implicitly*—unquestioningly; entirely depending on the one who gave the order. *Obeys orders*—Nelson did not himself always act on this principle. *Without attempting to form any opinion of your own*—This is perhaps pushing the principle of subordination to an indefensible extreme even for a junior officer! *Hate a Frenchman*—Nelson was himself implacable in his hatred

of the French. *The War*—the War of the French Revolution, as it is named in English History.

## Para 2

Under Lord Hood—Lord Hood was the commander of the *Mediterranean Fleet*, and not of the *Agamemnon*. *Would willingly have formed itself.....England*—i.e., out of hatred of the excesses committed by the French the South of France would have joined England, provided England gave her republican rule *Good principles had been perilously abused*—i.e., people entertained fearfully erroneous ideas about what constituted respectable political opinions. This is illustrated in the next part of the sentence. Democracy—Republic—The difference between these two forms of government is that the former means ‘rule of the people’; the latter generally ‘rule of a chosen section of the people’. A republican form of government is not liable to such excesses as are apt to arise in a democracy *The fair occasion*—the opportunity of converting the people of southern France into allies of England. *Dividing*—and therefore weakening. *Negotiated with*—wrote letters to *Toulon*—a seaport of France on the Mediterranean coast *Provisionally*—temporarily. *Fatally for themselves*—because the town was soon captured by Napoleon, and the inhabitants brutally massacred. *Dispatches*—official letters *Our envoy*—the British ambassador. *Court of Naples*—Naples was then a separate kingdom under the crown of Spain. Sir William after his first interview.....world—This is mentioned in illustration of the fact that the future greatness of Nelson was observed in him long before he was known to fame, by almost all with whom he came into contact; probably also because it was upon this occasion that Nelson first met Lady Hamilton, who exercised so marked an influence over his later life, but though she was still in the prime of her singular loveliness, not a ripple stirred the surface of his soul, afterwards so powerfully perturbed by this fascinating woman. Commodore—an officer who

commands a detachment of ships during the absence of the admiral.

### Para 8

[Page 40.] *Expostulate*—remonstrate. *The Dey*—more usually called Bey, the title of the Turkish Viceroy of Tunis who paid tribute to the Sultan. *Tunis* was at this time a part of the Turkish Empire. *Impolicy*—unwise conduct. *Atrocity*—cruelties. *Were of little avail*—had no effect. *Barbary*—a general name given to the northern portion of Africa including Tunis. In selecting this name Southey no doubt intends to suggest the barbarities of the Turkish rulers to whom no cruelties are cruelties. *Heinous*—atrocious; sinful. *Once done the same*—He here refers to the execution of Charles I. *Suggested*—inspired; put into his mouth. *Gained the ascendancy*—gained over him; converted him into their ally. *General Paoli*—A complete account of this great Corsican patriot is given by Southey himself in the pages following. Here is a Summary:—Pasquale De Paoli, whose father was in 1735 elected one of the Chief Magistrates of the island and subsequently acted as a leader in the revolt against the Genoese, was born in 1726. On being compelled to leave Corsica in 1739, he (the father) retired to Naples, where Paoli was placed in the military college of that city. After serving for a short time as lieutenant in the Neapolitan army, he was invited by the Corsicans to become their Captain-General. In 1755 he put himself at the head of his countrymen, and during twelve years waged a fierce war with the Genoese, who were in the end driven from almost every fort in the island. He established a legislative assembly in which sat 500 deputies, elected by the country. This assembly elected an executive body of nine members, of which Paoli was the president, and chief of the supreme magistracy of Corsica. He organized a well-trained militia of 30,000 men, and established a fleet which constantly harassed Genoese vessels. Genoa however gave up the island to France

in 1768, and soon afterwards a large French force was landed, against whom Paoli and his followers fought desperately, and in two battles defeated the French with great slaughter. But large reinforcements arriving from France, the Corsicans were at last totally routed and Corsica had to submit. Paoli went first to Leghorn and afterwards to England, where he remained until 1789, when he went to Paris and was created Military Commandment in Corsica. Whilst the government of France was monarchical Paoli remained loyal; but at the outbreak of the Revolution, he requested the assistance of the English in driving the French out of Corsica. The crown of the kingdom was subsequently offered to the King of England, and Sir Gilbert Elliot named Viceroy. The Corsicans had desired that Paoli should have been appointed to that office, and to avoid dissensions, Paoli left the island and went to England, and resided in London until his death in 1807, living upon a pension allowed him by the British Government. *The Anti-gallican party*—the party opposed to the French.

#### Para 4

*N.B.*—This and the following six paragraphs make a sort of digression, containing the earlier history of Corsica, which it is necessary to know to be able to understand the course of events Southey is now going to narrate.

*Heroic patriotism of the Corsicans*—see, as shown in their twelve years' struggle with the Genoese conquerors and in their ultimate deliverance from Genoese rule. *A melancholy tale*—because they were conquered in turn by the Moors, the Pisans, the Spaniards, the Genoese, and the French. *Malaria or pestilential atmosphere*—The root-meaning of the word 'Malaria' (from Italian *Mala*—bad, and *aria*—air) is pestilential atmosphere. It is the name of a kind of fever prevalent in marshy soils. In Southey's time the word was considered a foreign word, and hence in the book it is printed in italics, but it has

now become naturalised in English. *Sufficiently distant from the nearest shores*—It is 100 miles to the south-west of the nearest point of France, 50 miles from the Italian coast. *Subsisted*—existed. *As an independent state*—as a separate kingdom. It is geographically isolated, and hence it seems that it was meant by nature to exist as an independent state. *If the welfare.. . policy*—i.e., Corsica would have continued a separate state, had not the greed of empire and the lust of conquest driven conquerors to its shores. *Moors*—properly, inhabitants of Morocco, often used as a general term for Mohammedans. *Pisans*—inhabitants of Pisa, formerly a portion of the grand duchy of Tuscany (in Italy). *The kings of Aragon*—i.e., the Kings of Spain. *Genoese*—the people of Genoa in Italy. *Yoke*—government, subjection. *Heaviest*—most oppressive. *With an iron rod*—despotically; harshly. *Resorted to assassination*—i.e. murdered him secretly. *Quelled*—subdued. *Auxiliaries*—bodies of troops that had come to help them. *Charles VI*—Emperor of Germany from 1711 to 1740. He was the last male of the line of the Austrian Hapsburgs.

[Page 41] *A people who had never &c.*—the Corsicans who had given him no provocation for joining in a war upon them. *Whatever is most dear to man*—i.e., liberty. *Theodore, a Westphalian baron*—Theodore Etienne von Neuhoﬀ was born in 1690. He was the son of a German military officer. Theodore was for some time in the service of a Swedish minister; he then entered the Spanish service, and rose to the rank of Colonel. He soon afterwards married one of the queen's maids of-honor, by whom he had a son. After deserting his wife, whose jewels he carried off, Theodore went to Sweden, Holland, Italy, France, and England, travelling under different names and titles. In 1736 he engaged with several Corsican leaders, who promised to hail him king of Corsica, on the condition that he should procure aid for the islanders in their struggle against Genoa. Theodore thereupon set out for Tunis, whose Bey he induced to



give him munitions of war, food and some money. Thus provided he set out from Tunis and landed in Corsica. Shortly afterwards the Corsicans elected him their king, and during several months he exercised regal power, created an order of knighthood and put three persons to death. The state of Genoa, however, declared him and his followers traitors, and in a short time the Corsicans grew tired of their monarch. He thereupon left Corsica to seek help, which he declared had been promised him, but first appointed deputies to manage affairs during his absence. He next travelled in Italy, France and Holland. At Amsterdam he was imprisoned for debt, but found means to procure his release, as well as to fit out a frigate and three merchant vessels with which he set sail for Corsica in 1738. The Genoese and French were now almost masters of the island, and the "king" was afraid to disembark. Four years afterwards he again went to Corsica, but could not succeed in obtaining recognition from his former subjects. He subsequently repaired to London, where he was reduced to poverty, and became a prisoner in the King's Bench for debt. In 1756, Horace Walpole procured his release, Theodoric registering his kingdom of Corsica for the benefit of his creditors. He died in London in a state bordering upon destitution in 1756. *Appeared upon the stage*—i.e., mixed up in the contest. *Men were not accustomed .. .. kingdoms*—i.e., the attempt to conquer a kingdom by a political enterpriser was a rare event in history. *Common talk of Europe*—an object of general interest throughout Europe. The reason of this (as given in the previous part of the sentence) was that his was a novel attempt. Southey had probably the later adventurer Napoleon in mind when he said "in that age men were not accustomed &c" *Play*—This word connotes a game of chance. These adventurers regarded the conquest of a kingdom as a game of chance, which, if they won, would at once make them king, but if they lost it would not matter much to them. *Ripperda*—(born

about 1690, died 1737), a German who served as a general or statesman in Holland, Spain, and Morocco, and was always ready to adopt the religion of the country in which he was settled. He became virtually prime minister of Spain for a time. *Alberoni*—(born 1664, died 1752), an Italian adventurer of low birth who became prime minister of Spain and a cardinal. He was most unscrupulous and did much to revive the ancient glory of Spain". (Blaisdell). *Their example*—the fact of their having risen from low birth *Inflamed*—excited. *Unprincipled*—unscrupulous. *Struck*—impressed. *Imposing talents*—brilliant abilities. *Magnified*—exaggerated. *Held but*—made. *Had his means, . . . , them*—i.e., if he could really bring the help he promised; if he was really so powerful as he made them believe. *They could not have acted. . . . in thus*—the Corsicans would have been perfectly right in electing him king and thereby &c. *Rivalries*—internal dissensions—one section of the people supporting the Genoese rule, another standing up for independence, a third probably leaning towards France &c, *Proved pernicious to the public weal*—made them victims of foreign conquest. *Struck*—coined The right of coining money is one of the essential attributes of sovereignty. *Block up*—besieged. *They cooled in their affections towards him*—their fascination for him was gone, they were a little tired of him *In proportion . disappointed*—i.e., the greater the delay he made in fulfilling his promises the more did the people grow tired of him. *Plea*—excuse. *Expediting*—hastening. *Address*—dexterity

[Page 42] *The Jews*—the Jews were at that time the richest bankers *Supercargo*—a person in charge of the cargo of a merchant vessel. *Him*—the supercargo. *The account*—viz, the account of the merchants from whom he had brought the warlike stores. He never intended to pay for them, and he had not taken them for sale, but for his own use; hence the only way of settling the merchants' account was by killing their agent

who came in charge. Threw in—sent to the island. A price had been set upon his head—a sum of money had been promised to who ever should put him to death. The use of 'head' in this phrase points to the time when those, commissioned to kill any man, brought the dead man's head as the best proof of their having done their work. Dreams of royalty—ambition to become a king. The King's Bench—This was the name of the prison in which debtors were confined. An act of insolvency—an Act of Parliament enabling persons unable to pay their debts to be released from imprisonment. Made over—surrendered.

#### Para 5

Who have never acted a generous part—who are noted for their meanness in all their public conduct. Southey here seems to have caught his hero's hatred of the French. Entered into the views of—agreed to help. Acceded—was in conformity. Their own policy—This is impliedly indicated in the next part of the sentence. Their policy was to make conquests for themselves while they professed to help others in it. Such was their ascendancy at Genoa—Genoa was then a republic established after the French form, and completely under French influence. These allies—the Genoese. Entered into the contest—joined in the war. Their usual vigour—Here Southey pays an unconscious compliment to the fighting qualities of the French. Affecting memorial—touching appeal for mercy. The Court of Versailles—the French Court. Louis XIV built a magnificent palace at Versailles, twelve miles from Paris. Remorseless—cruel. Flagitious—grossly wicked. Poured in—sent in large numbers. By which means—in this disguise. Deceived—They were deceived into believing these French soldiers to be their own countrymen. Hung—hanged: Who fell into their hands—whom they could capture. A war of this kind—a war of extermination. With success—without availing opposition from the people. A war of this

*kind.....Corsica*—In this sentence Southey replies to the question, which he anticipates, “ why did the inhabitants not rise to a man and drive away these French soldiers ? ” His reply is, “ They could not—they were so few—their country was so small ”. *Perfect scrutiny*—complete submission. *Which they called peace*—The French idea of the war, that was going on in Corsica when they interfered, was that it was a revolt against lawful authority ; Southey’s idea is that it was a life and-death struggle for lawful independence. When the war was over, the French people said that they had established peace ; Southey calls it the establishment of slavery.

[Page 43.]—*Men and women and boys*—the inhabitants in a body. *Rose*—rose in revolt. *The circumstances of the time.....them*—i.e., they could now count upon foreign assistance on their side. *Sardinia*—an island south of Corsica, which was then a kingdom of its own under the Duke of Savoy. *Bombarded*—fired at. *Bastia and St. Fecenzo*—both seaports of Corsica. *The patriots*—the leaders of the Corsicans. *The impression made upon.. .. favourable*—i.e., in conquering these two seaport towns for the Corsicans, the English did not believe they had rendered assistance to the really helpless ; for they had formed a somewhat low opinion of the Corsican character. *Heart burning*—mutual jealousy. *Rival chiefs*—leaders of the Corsicans who fought for power among themselves. *Lawless turbulence*—revolt. *They had witnessed the heart burning.....* *own nature*—Explanation.—Though the English did the Corsicans a piece of signal service by rescuing two of their seaports from the enemy, yet they were afterwards rather sorry that they had done so much for a people who really deserved nothing. For they had come to entertain a low opinion about the Corsican character in consequence of the general degradation which they saw among the inhabitants, and the mutual jealousy displayed by their leaders. But, says Southey, the Corsicans were not to blame for it, it was

the harsh rule to which they had been subjected for ages that had crushed all spirit of resistance out of them. Their virtues were all due to themselves; their vices were not *This feeling—viz.,* the idea that the servile barbarous Corsicans were undeserving of any assistance. *Influenced—sc,* in rejecting their proposal. *Preserve the same sentiments—*continue to be ready to put themselves under British protection.

#### Para 6

*Government for themselves—*independent government. *Protector—*The student will remember that this title was also adopted by Oliver Cromwell *Is represented—*is described by historians. *Partisan—a* secret ally. *Favouring the views—*promoting the cause. *The oppressors of his country—the* Genoese. *Treasonable—*treacherous He was a traitor to his country. *Worthy of old times—i.e.,* a true hero This phrase reflects a belief, shared by quite a large section of mankind, that the present age is a degenerate one *Serene—*composed He was not at all agitated *Blethen-in-arms—*fellow soldiers. *Implored—*prayed for. *Joined his banner—*enlisted as soldiers ready to fight under his command. *Corte—a* town in Corsica *The garrison—the* Genoese soldiers who were defending the city. *Straying—*wandering.

[Page 44.] *Sallied out—*left the castle. *Execrable—*extremely wicked. *Batter—*fire shots at *The Corsicans stopped—*For they recognised the child of their Protector. *With becoming feeling—*with legitimate pride. *So honourable—*because he was ready to sacrifice the life of his eldest son for the sake of his country. *Conducted the affairs of the island—*ruled Corsica as Protector. *Wretches—*detestable assassins *Set on—*instigated *It is believed...certainly—*There is no positive proof of the instigation; but of the subsequent reward there is *Pensioned—*rewarded by their being granted a pension. *In such a state—*so far recovered in strength.

## Para 7

*Effected their escape*—fled. *Reduced it to obedience*—subjected it See p. 42 *The Neapolitan service*—as an officer of the army of Naples *Take the command*—become their leader in their struggle for independence. *He did not hesitate long*—i.e. he soon consented to go. *Far advanced in years*—old. *In my mind...you*—I shall be constantly thinking of you.

[Page 45] *Chief*—i.e. "President," as we would now say. *Restored the authority of the laws*—put an end to the anarchy that prevailed. He established courts for the trial of offences. *Took*—adopted *Repressing*—checking. *Molding*—elevating the character of *The rising generation*—the youths of Corsica *Upon its wicked... usurpation*—with a view to conquer the country *Commonwealth*—republic. *The Grecian states*—such as Sparta, Athens, Thebes &c *Was indebted*—owed *Livre*—an old French coin. *Battalion*—a general name for a band of soldiers, technically a body of infantry composed of from 300 to 1000 men, and forming a division of a regiment. *This conduct*—the real intention of the French was to avoid payment of the money debt by a trick which, if successful, would bring them the added advantage of a territorial acquisition *All generous hearts*—all sensible men *Forcibly*—in strong words *Rousseau*—Jean Jacques Rousseau, a celebrated French writer whose works had great influence in promoting the French Revolution. *With all his errors*—in spite of many faults *Was seldom deficient*. *humanity*—always sympathised with the sufferings of man *Sold to*—under the influence of *Relentless*—merciless *Persecuting*—inflicting misery upon. *If they knew of a freeman...extirpating him*—This sentence details several characteristics of the French passion for tyranny —(1) In their desire to crush liberty they do not take into consideration the numerical strength of the nation whose liberty they proceed to destroy—as shown by the words "a freeman"; (2) they do not mind the trouble and cost to themselves—as shown by the

words "at the other end of the world"; (3) they do not also mind if the project brings no gain to themselves—as shown by the words "mere pleasure". *Extirpating*—killing.

### Para 8

*Mercenary*—concerned with the payment of a debt. *Effected this*—gained them their object. *Would that*—I wish that Southey here expresses his regret at the unworthy conduct (as he believes) of Great Britain in not helping the Corsicans. *But*—here equivalent to—'but it was not, for'. *The peace of Paris*—concluded in 1783 between France, England, Spain, and Portugal. *Defy*—challenge *Rome, Sparta or Thebes*—the most famous ancient states of the world. *Would say*—was in the habit of saying

[Page 46] *Respite*—a brief interval of peace. *Un-speakable*—very great *In the prospect of*—in the hope of gaining *He would be content to be forgotten*—he desired no fame for himself *Affected*—pretended. *Under-value*—think of as less than it actually was *Like the prophet Elisha stretched &c*—Elisha was a prophet who restored life to the son of the Shunamite widow. When doing so he "went up and lay upon the child, and put his mouth upon his mouth, and his eyes upon his eyes, and his hands upon his hands, and he stretched himself upon the child, and the flesh of the child waxed warm" (2 Kings, iv 34) The force of the simile is 'we are the divine agents of our country's regeneration'.

### Para 9

*The four years*—sc during which the French troops had to stay in Corsica to pay off the debt to Genoa. *Any bargain or sale*—any contract between two foreign powers *Against the will of the inhabitants*—Here is Southey's theory of the State. Everything concerning the government, occupation, or transfer of a country from one nation to another, must be determined by the consent of the inhabitants of the country. *Butchering*—cruelly.

putting to death. *Enormities—cruelties. Seems but a speck*—is only a very trifling instance. That is, France has committed far greater cruelties than this. *Foulest—most detestable; vilest. Suffered by the hands of the executioner*—was hanged. *Has infinitely less guilt upon his soul*—is far less to be condemned. *The statesman who concluded this treaty—Choiseul* was the name of the French statesman who concluded this treaty in 1768. 'This treaty' is the treaty between France and Genoa whereby France acquired the sovereignty over Corsica on payment of forty millions of livres. *The monarch who sanctioned and confirmed it*—This monarch was Louis XVI. *The foulest murderer that ever suffered &c*—This is a very strong condemnation of the French Power—nation. *Interposed ..... islanders*—gave the Corsicans any help. *Under their government*—Corsica was to be a French dependency. *The rocks which surrounded him would melt away before &c*—i.e. it was absolutely impossible for him to prove a traitor to the cause of Corsican independence by accepting the governorship of Corsica, which he would have to hold under the French crown. *Kept them at bay*—turned upon them fiercely. The expression is taken from stag-hunting. In course of pursuit a stag sometimes turns upon the hunting dogs, in which position it is said to be "at bay", because the dogs stand 'baying' (barking) round him.

[Page 47] *Resigned his seat in the cabinet*—when a member of the cabinet entirely disapproves of the policy followed by his colleagues, he resigns. *Looked on—remained inactive; took no steps. Abominable—Important*—Lord Shelburne was in sympathy with the Corsicans. His view was that France should, on no account, be allowed to take possession of Corsica. This view was based on two reasons—a moral and a political. The moral reason is suggested by the word 'abominable', and the political by 'important'. The possession of Corsica by the French was 'abominable', because it was gained at the cost of a brave people's independence,



it was 'important' because it greatly added to the power of France and thereby made her a more formidable rival of England's *Aggrandisement*—territorial supremacy. *As became her*—worthily

#### Para 10

*Twenty years*—from 1769 to 1789. *Restoration*—i.e. independence *As if animated by one spirit*—in one body *The national assembly*—sc of France *Department*—In France the word department is a division of territory. *Which it ought not to have done*—Southey holds that the Corsicans should not have accepted anything short of absolute independence *Aidou*—vigour and zeal *Naturally*—out of love for his country. *Bar*—here, tribunal *Dispelled*—removed, destroyed. *Those hopes of a new and better order of things*—At the beginning of the French Revolution many young enthusiasts held most extravagant hopes of the regeneration of the human race. They believed that a golden age was about to come. Southey himself was one of those who entertained similar views. The following two lines from Wordsworth's poem on the "French Revolution" may be taken to reflect this attitude of the enthusiasts —

"Bliss was it in that dawn to be alive,  
But to be young was very heaven"

The Reign of Terror which succeeded shattered these hopes, and the lively enthusiasm changed into deadly disgust *Execution of the king*—Louis XVI. king of France was executed on the 21st of January 1793 *A civil war*—between the nobility and the commons of France *Issue*—result *Break the connection .... Republic*—make Corsica absolutely independent of France. *The Convention*—the name of the assembly which abolished monarchy in 1792 and governed France until 1795. *Such a design*—that the Corsicans were attempting to regain their independence *Perhaps occasioning it by their suspicions*—probably it was this suspicious attitude of the Convention that led Paoli to attempt to win back the Corsican inde-

pendence. Ordered him to their bar—summoned him for trial in the court of the assembly. That way led to the guillotine—he was well aware that he would be put to death after a nominal trial. He would never be ... duty—i.e. that he was bound to obey the orders of the assembly.

[Page 48] Summary—calculated to dispose of the matter quickly. Hereditary party feeling—the consideration that their family had always supported the French interest. Sincere in Jacobinism—real followers of extreme revolutionary principles. The first followers of this principle were Mirabeau, Danton and others, who formed a club. This club used to meet in an old convent of the Jacobins or Dominican Friars. Hence the name Jacobin. Took the field—engaged in active operations. Noonday—height. The same idiom is sometimes put as “the meridian of one’s fame.” Proscribed—outlawed; i.e. declared him beyond the protection of the laws, so that any one who chose to do so could kill him without fear of punishment.

#### Para 11.

Opened—began. In reliance upon it—on the strength of this promise. Upon this service—to attack St. Fiorenzo by sea. Repulsed—driven back. Compelled to evacuate Toulon—See note on page 39. The English were driven from Toulon by Napoleon, then a Major in the French army and in charge of the artillery. Injurious—because the English could not thenceforth co-operate heartily with Paoli. Sir John Moore—a brilliant English soldier who fell in the battle of Corunna in 1809. Every schoolboy knows him as the subject of Wolfe’s famous poem beginning—

“Not a drum was heard, not a funeral note.”

Confer—discuss. Plan of operations—in what way the war was to be conducted. In consideration of—in return for. Acquiesce in—accept.

[Page 49] *Off*—at a little distance from the coast  
*Throwing in*—sending. *Re embarked*—came back to  
 the ships.

### Para 12

*Exercised himself*—was busy. *Intercepting*—stopping  
 on their way. *Cutting out vessels*—attacking vessels in  
 small boats and taking them out of the harbour after  
 cutting their cables. *Depresses the spirits of*—tires out.  
*Injures*—inflicts any great loss. *Individual superiority*—  
 as opposed to the superiority of a nation over another  
 nation. The sense of this latter kind of superiority is  
 indicated in a decisive naval battle. *Maintain that post*—  
 hold out. *Bastia*—another town of Corsica. *Declined*  
*co-operating*—refused to join in the attack upon Bastia.  
*Impracticable*—something which cannot be done.

### Para 13.

*A proper sense..... services*—that he valued Nelson's  
 services. *Confidence in his talents*—he knew that Nelson  
 was a competent officer and so he hoped for success.  
*Older*—who was senior to Nelson. A senior officer could  
 have countermanded Nelson's orders, and the attempt  
 might have failed. *Brush*—a slight engagement. *To a*  
*certainty*—undoubtedly. *Stormed*—made a sudden attack  
 upon. *Carried*—captured. *Armies go so slow*—the  
 march of forces by land is very slow. The reason was  
 that mobilization in those days had not been perfected  
 into a science, even in theory. *Get forward*—advance.  
*I daresay*—probably. *They act on a surer principle,*  
*although we seldom fail*—Here Nelson draws a compari-  
 son between the results of the slow march of the army,  
 and the quick march of the navy. He says the former  
 probably only minimises danger, but the latter is more  
 conducive to victory. By the word "we" he means "the  
 navy". *The heights*—Bastia is a fortified town built on  
 a hill in the form of an amphitheatre. *Reconnotted*—  
 taken a careful survey of. *What*—what terrible danger.

[Page 50.] *Retreat*—the retreat to St. Fiorenzo *Comprehend*—understand. *Mind*—are afraid of. No more than peas—i.e., not in the least.

Para 14

*Local*—pertaining to the place (Bastia) itself. *With our present means and force*—with such a small force as we have now. *Visionary*—improbable *Be more gratifying to his feelings*—more please him; i.e. he is perfectly willing *Responsibility*—i.e. he is willing to bear all the consequences if the attempt should fail *Succeeded*—succeeded General Dundas. *Coincided in opinion*—agreed in thinking the attempt to be impossible. *His predecessor*—General Dundas. *His lordship*—Lord Hood. *Borne on the ship's books*—their names were entered in the registers. *Complements*—the full number of men a ship was authorized to carry. *Of the right sort*—determined and brave *Lying idle*—doing nothing.

Para. 15

*Brigadier*—The military title of Brigadier-general was equivalent to the naval title of Commodore. *Any but British seamen*—Nelson's belief in the efficiency of the British navy is manifest in all his correspondence. *Dexterous*=efficient

[Page 51.] *With equal spirit*—as gallantly as the sailors. *But*=who does not *Deserted by the general*—left to himself alone. *It*—this feeling of their being left to do everything themselves *Equal to double their numbers*—i.e. doubly determined in their endeavours to reduce the place. *Of many*—among many other proofs. *Equal*—sc in valour and determination *Too much may indeed be exacted from them*—they may be disheartened. *Set their face toward a foe and there is nothing.... perform*—if you cause them to charge the enemy, they can win, if victory is at all possible. Southey is no doubt thinking of Sir John Moore's retreat and the battle of Corunna. When his army after a long and disheartening retreat was at last given an opportunity of fighting a pitched

battle, the spirits of the soldiers immediately rose, and they fought with great valour and success against the enemies who had been so long pursuing them.

Para. 16

*Improved*—made good use of. *Works*—defensive works. *Hot shot*—The cannon balls were heated in order that they might set the ship's planks on fire. *Trust to the generosity of the English*—surrender myself to the English to treat me with such kindness as they choose. *Sustained*—continued. *Such a reply*—such a defiant reply. *Augur*—indicate *Capitulation*—surrender.

Para. 17

*Event*—result. *They themselves excused*—done—i.e. the place was conquered with such great difficulty that the sailors thought their generals were not to be blamed for having discouraged the attempt. *All astonishment*—greatly astonished. *Regulars*—soldiers belonging to the standing army. *National guards*—a militia organized for local defence. A national guard was something like the present volunteer only required to fight on occasions of great national danger; at other times he could pursue his peaceful calling. *Laying down their arms*—surrendering.

Para. 18

[Page 52] *Calvi*—a fortified sea port of Corsica, about 40 miles south-west of Bastia. *Had an adequate field allotted him*—was given sufficient opportunities. *Had less responsibility*—i.e. was not in sole charge of the operations. *After his own heart*—of the same views as he was. *Never sparing of himself*—very hard-working. *Advanced*—front. This shows his bravery. *The service was not less hard*—the capture of Calvi was as difficult an attempt as that of Bastia had been. *Fag*—work hard. *We will fag ourselves to death.....doors*—i.e., we will try our utmost to gain success and avoid all blame. *Forgotten*—sc. in estimating the responsibility of the English. *Pieces of heavy ordnance*—big guns. *Fought*—worked. *The climate...service*—more people died through disease

than were killed in battle *Our season*—the English season *The "dog days"*—the period from about the 3d of July to about the 11th of August, so called because during that period the Sirius or the dog-star (whence the term) rises and sets with the sun, the most unhealthy season of the year. *Like so many phantoms*—very much reduced. *The reed among the oaks*—i.e. one who though of a weak constitution was yet saved from death, when stouter people were killed in large numbers. *Bowing before the storm*—only enfeebled by disease. *They*—stronger men. *Laid low*—killed. *Disorders*—diseases. *Them*—viz those diseases. *Fasten on*—become chronic; i.e. end fatally.

[Page 53] *Slightly*—as a slight injury. *Suffered*—allowed. *It*—i.e. this injury to his eye. *Confine him*—prevent him from going to duty.

#### Para 19.

*Strange omission*—because the success of the attempt was in great measure due to Nelson. *Noways*—not at all. *Journal*—diary. *In the conspicuous manner which*—as richly as *Administration*—people who were in power.

#### Para 20

*Wore a gloomy aspect*—were in a troubled state. *Arts*—diplomacy. *Arms*—invasion. *The arts as well as the arms of the enemy. ....there*—The political situation in the Mediterranean at the close of 1794 was as follows:—In the north the allied armies of Great Britain, Austria and Holland had been driven out of France and Belgium, and the United Provinces were in point of submission. On the east, the Austrians and Prussians had retreated to the far bank of the Rhine, and Prussia was about to withdraw from the coalition. On the south, the French had crossed the Pyrenees into Spain, which also was soon to ask for peace. The French also occupied the Riviera, which belonged to Genoa, and thus secured an easy passage into Italy. *Tuscany*—the Grand duchy of Tuscany included Florence, Leghorn, Pisa &c. *Concluded peace*—sc. with France.

*We*—the English *That island*—Corsica. *Constitution*—government The scheme for the government of Corsica as a British dependency was that it should be administered by the Corsicans themselves, under a Viceroy appointed by the British crown. *No transaction .. conducted*—i.e. in all her relations with Corsica, Great Britain observed the strictest fairness *Our conduct was unwise*—the English ought to have made the island absolutely independent. *Such*—an independent state. *As long as protection might be needed*—the English protection was to continue only so long as the Corsicans were not able to govern themselves *Felt as a nation*—felt as one undivided people. *One party*—sc. of the Corsicans, “the majority”. *Looked to*—sided with. *Which*—sc. of England and France *Our language was against us*—the Corsican language is akin to French, a fact which made an alliance with France more natural.

[Page 54] *Unaccommodating manners*—straight forward behaviour, not very obliging *It is to be feared*—Southey adds this to save this opinion of his from attacks by people who believe the English to be a very obliging people *Still more so*—made an alliance with England still more improbable. *Better politicians*—more skilled in the art of diplomacy. *Intrigue*—political plotting. *Inspite of all unions*—inspite of their former oppression. *Ought not*—because it was so severe. *Acquiring strength*—growing *Wise policy*—because, as he explains later on, it encourages their friends and dismays their enemies *Impress the opinion upon*—convince *Lofty language*—vain boasts *Threatening before it strikes*—making a great show of strength before actually fighting the enemy *System*—policy. *Keeps up the spirits of*—keeps them hopeful encourages them *Dismay*—appal, terrify. *Been taught to feel .. seas*—suffered any heavy defeat at sea. *Braved*—defied. *That Element*—the sea. The sea is water and water is one of the four Elements.

*Superior*—stronger. *Express*—clear; distinct. *Engage them*—fight them. *The Toulon fleet*—the French fleet stationed off Toulon. *Ships of the line*—regular men-of-war. *Put to sea*—i.e., left Toulon harbour in search of the English. *Admiral Hotham*—who had succeeded Lord Hood as commander of the Mediterranean fleet. *Leghorn*—a town and seaport of Italy on the Mediterranean. *One Neapolitan seventy four*—This was the *Fanciotti* commanded by Caraccioli. *General action*—regular battle. *On such occasions*—immediately before a battle. *As that... ..farewell*—in the thought that he might be killed in that battle. *Are in my own keeping*—depend upon myself.

## Para 22

*Manœuvring*—sailing hither and thither in preparation for the attack. *Suffered themselves to be chased*—proceeded to retreat, the English pursuing them. *Carried away*—had them broken.

[Page 55] *Took in tow*—dragged it through the water by a rope. *Gunshot distance*—the distance to which shot can be thrown from a gun. *Her weather bow*—the side of her prow exposed to the wind. A distant object is said to be on the bow of a ship when it is within forty-five degrees of a point straight ahead. *Drew near*—sailed closer to the *Ca Ira Truly*—unwillingly. *Cut up*—disabled. *Disabled*—scattered. *The helm to be put a-sta:board*—the helm to be moved to the right side so as to turn the prow of his ship to the left. *The driver*—the large fore-and-aft sail stretching from the mizen mast to the stern. *The driver and after sails*—This should be 'the driver and other after sails, because the driver is one of the after sails, i.e. sails on the mizen mast. *To be brailled up and shivered*—To 'brail up' a sail is to remove it from the action of the wind; to 'shiver' a sail is to place it in such a position that the wind does not fill it. The *Agamemnon* was sailing across the wind straight in pursuit of the *Ca Ira*. The object



of the order now given was to allow her to turn her head away from the wind *Fell off*—turned her head away from the wind *Gave the enemy her whole broadside*—he could bring his ship in a position from which he could fire all the guns on her side on the *Ca Ira* *Braced up the after-yards*—by means of the ropes called braces pulled the yards of the mizen mast into such a position that the square sails caught the wind blowing from the starboard, and so assisted the helm in turning the prow to starboard, so that the *Agamemnon* once more sailed in pursuit of the *Ca Ira* *A-port*—to the left or larboard. In modern English *port* is used instead of *larboard* to avoid mistakes that might occur from the similarity of the words *starboard* and *larboard* *Stood after her again*—once more sailed in pursuit of the *Ca Ira* *Get to bear on*—discharge *In tatters*—torn to pieces. *Mizzen*—belonging to the rear. *Cross jackyards*—(pronounced crojack yards) the lower yards on the mizen mast. *Shot away*—were torn *Hove in stays and got her round*—turned round on a new tack and pulled the other ship round *'Stays'* are long ropes stretching from the upper end of each mast towards the stern and supporting the masts front in front, as the shrouds support them on each side *Opened their fire*—began to fire their guns. *Elevated*—raised up the muzzles of. 'Elevation' in artillery is the angle which the cannon makes with the plane of the horizon. The more distant the object fired at is, the higher the muzzle of the cannon has to be raised. *For*—to aim at. *Altering the elevation*—aiming nearer. *Hove in stays*—changed from one tack to another. *As if she had been turning into Spithead*—*Spithead* is the place in England that contains the chief naval arsenal. Its dockyard is the largest in the country The dockyard is entered by two large gates, known as the Lion and the Unicorn. It therefore requires great skill to take the ships into the dockyard through these gates. *Turning into*=entering. *Wore*—tacked.

[Page 56] *Lee bow*—the side sheltered from the wind. *Standing—moving To leeward*—so as to pass the Agamemnon on the leeward side. *Bore away*—changed the course of his ship and made her run before the wind. *Hauled close to the wind*—sailed nearly straight against the wind. *Ineffectual*—that failed to touch him. *Between wind and water*—in the part of the hull which is sometimes under water and sometimes above it. Shots in this part are peculiarly dangerous, because they are so low down that they can be repaired with difficulty from the outside, and let in the water when the ship leans over on one side. *Get aloft*—raise up.

#### Para 23

*Taken aback*—checked by a sudden change of wind. *The enemy's fleet kept the southerly wind*—a southerly wind was blowing at the spot where the French ships were. *Body*—principal part. *Cut these ships off*—prevent them from joining the main body. *Partial action*—irregular battle. *Struck*—lowered their flags in token of surrender. *Become attached*—fallen in love with. *As ever stepped a quarter deck*—i.e. as any officer. The quarter-deck or upper deck at the stern is the part of the ship occupied by officers.

#### Para 24

*Behaved very ill*—took to shameful flight. *Prizes*—captured ships. *With*—in charge of. *Crippled*—damaged; so that they were of no use in a chase. *Follow up the advantage to the utmost*—make most of the favourable opportunity.

[Page 57] *Sail*—ships. *Get at*—capture. *It would not do*—the admiral refused to be guided by my suggestions. *Had such a day*—won such a splendid victory. *The annals of England*—English history. *As the annals of England never produced*—hitherto unprecedented. *Do much*—gain great distinction. *My disposition cannot bear tame and slow measures*—I am naturally averse to cautious and dilatory proceedings. *Had I commanded*—if I had

been the admiral. *Graced my triumph*—fallen into my hands, I could have captured it. *Been in a confounded scrape*—fallen into a very bad difficulty. *Event—result.* *What the event would have been*—i.e. that Nelson could surely have captured the whole French fleet, if he had been allowed to do so. *Prophetic feelings*—marvellous insight into the future. *We also know it now*—we have reason to believe that that would have been the case. *Aboukir and Trafalgar*—Nelson's subsequent victories at Aboukir and Trafalgar. Aboukir Bay on the coast of Egypt is the scene of Nelson's famous victory at the battle of the Nile on August 1st, 1798. At Trafalgar in 1805, Nelson defeated the French and Spanish fleets, and thereby broke Napoleon's plan for an invasion of England. *Told it us*—shown to the world what marvellous powers he possessed.

#### Para 25

*Colonel of marines*—This title was then conferred on three, and afterwards on four old post-captains, and were in fact honourable sinecures which they relinquished on becoming admirals. These appointments were discontinued a few years ago, and "good service pensions", substituted for them. *Mark of approbation*—token of the recognition of his services. *Rather than expected*—but never hoped to receive. *In good season*—at a very proper time. *His spirits were oppressed*—he was dejected.

#### Para 26

*Entered upon*—began. *Line—kind.* *Riviera de Genoa*—the coast of Genoa. *Soldiering*—being engaged in active warfare. *Fixed—decided.* *The Brigadier—Nelson*. *Fell in—met.* *Gave chase—pursued*. *Hard pressed*—in danger of being overtaken by the French. *Bent his way back*—proceeded to return. *Watering*—replenishing its supply of fresh water. *Refitting*—being repaired. *Mortification*—pain. *In possession of*—captured by.

[Page 58] *Put out*—set sail. *Went off*—gave up the chase, retreated.

## Para 27

*Got under way*—set sail. *Baffling*—blowing from several directions at once. *Vexatious*—troublesome. *Close—fight* a regular battle. *The firing made a perfect calm*—Here is an old belief, common among sailors, that the firing of guns produces a calm at sea. *Being to windward*—being in the direction from which the wind was blowing, they got more wind than the English ships. The slight wind died away before it could travel the six or seven miles of sea that separated the two fleets. *Drew inshore*—got into the bay. *Becalmed*—unable to move through want of wind. *Combustibles*—articles that easily catch fire, such as gunpowder. *Their inventions*—this method which they had adopted of keeping a box of explosives to set fire to the English ships. *Put out*—launched. *Getting into close action*—preparing to fight a regular battle. *Being directly into*—blowing straight in the direction of.

## Para 28

*The result of which was*—in which they came to the decision. *This trade was stopped*—Although Genoa was neutral, her ships were taking corn and other provisions to France and places occupied by French soldiers. This trade Nelson was determined to prevent. *The allied armies*—the English, the Austrian and the Sardinian armies. *Hold their situation*—maintain their position. *Fall*—be captured by the enemies.

[Page 59.] *Supplies*—provisions. *Cut off*—put a stop to. *Blockade*—siege. *Liable to prosecution for detention and damage*—Nelson is here referring to what he experienced some time ago in relation to some American ships. See pp. 27-29.

## Para 29

*Charged his inactivity upon*—explained his inactivity as being due to the want of co-operation on the part of. *Piedmontese*—the inhabitants of Piedmont, then the principal province of the kingdom of Sardinia. *Neapolitans*—inhabitants of Naples. *Whom nothing could induce to*

act—who were obstinately slow and idle. *Concerted*—formed *Embarking*—sending in a ship *In the rear of*—behind *The English commodore*—Nelson *Spurring him on*—encouraging him *Field-pieces*—field-guns *Respecting*—as regards *Convoys*—ships to escort those vessels safely *Re embarkation*—i.e. retreat. *Cover it*—protect the troops from hostile attacks while they were embarking *Magazines*—warlike stores. *Oneglia*—a town of Italy on the gulf of Genoa.

#### Para 30

*All winds*—winds blowing from all directions It was sheltered from all the four sides. *Mole*—a massive stone work before a port, which it serves to defend from violence of the waves, thus protecting ships in a harbour. *Affecting*—pretending

[Page 60] *Winter*—lie during winter. *There was no risk .. himself*—he was willing to incur any risk. *Other ends*—selfish aims *The cause of the allies*—viz. to drive the French out of the coast of Genoa.

#### Para 31

*Beyond all description*—i.e. extremely. *The emperor*—the emperor of Austria *Touch*—obtain *Another four millions of English money*—The English had bribed the Emperor of Austria for his co-operation with England in driving the French out of Italy *War is their trade*—they are ready to fight on behalf of any one who was willing to pay for their services Germany was in those days the great field for recruiting mercenary soldiers. *Peace is ruin to them*—in times of peace they have no employment and hence they starve *We cannot expect wish*—it is natural they should not desire *Politics of courts*—the intrigues that are carried on in the courts of kings *Mean*—Politicians have sometimes to have recourse to degrading shifts to carry out their projects *All is trick and finesse*—all political dealings are hollow and insincere *To which the common cause is sacrificed*—to promote diplomatic relations between one country and

another, the interest of the nation at large is made to suffer. And this is how it happens. Suppose England is on terms of friendship with Austria. If Austria becomes engaged in any war, England is politically bound to help her, though the war might entail misery on her people. *Wants a loophole*—is trying to find some pretext to avoid fighting. *It has for some time appeared to me*—I have long believed. *Go no further .. position*—do nothing more than what he has already done. *Lay*—attribute *Miscarriage*—failure. *The enterprise against Nice*—the siege of Nice which was in possession of the French *Held out*—represented. *The great object of his army*—the city which his army considered most important to capture.

### Para 32

*To prevent this plea*—to prevent the Austrian General explaining his own inactivity as due to the non-co-operation of the British. *Addressed*—wrote to. *The time*—the time when the expedition would start for Nice. *Ready to embark*—he was going to send to besiege Nice. *Dispatch*—send. *A ship*—a messenger in a ship *Having no doubt of*—perfectly confident *The plan*—the proposal of blockading Nice. *If the whole fleet .. transports*—i.e., even if Nelson sent ever so many ships to co-operate with the Austrian Commander in blockading Nice *Excuse*—pretext for evading his duty. *Appointed to reside at the Austrian headquarters*—made the British Envoy at the Austrian headquarters *Entertained the same idea. .. sincerity*—agreed with Nelson in believing that the Austrian General had no earnest desire to fight the French out of Italy. *It*—his insincerity. *Not put clearly to the proof*—was not so plainly manifest, was cloaked in diplomatic language.

[Page 61] *As it ought to have been*—as Nelson expected it would do *Declare himself ready*—communicate his readiness *With*—to send. *The vessels necessary, &c.*—the transports he had promised to supply *Put the army in motion*—give orders to the troops to start on the

expedition. *Was not enabled to do this*—could not express his readiness to send the transports, because they were not forthcoming. *Who was highly meritorious in*—who displayed his own ability by *Leaving*—allowing. *Such a man*—an officer like Nelson. *So much at his own discretion*—to undertake so much of the conduct of the war on his own responsibility, without waiting for his orders *Pursued*—followed. *System*—policy. *Ill accordin*g—which was inconsistent. *Comprehensive*—wise, broad. *Regretted*—was sorry for the resignation. *Concerted*—proposed. *Astonish*—surprise. *Perhaps the English*—even the people who joined in the attempt would be surprised at its wonderful success.

#### Para 38

*No unity in the views*—great difference in the opinions. *Cordiality*—sincerity *Energy*—vigorous operation. *Councils*—i.e. suggestions. *Neutral powers*—the countries that held aloof from the war. *Effectually*—successfully energetically *The Genoese ports*. *French privateers*—though Genoa was neutral, it yet assisted the French by allowing shelter to the French ships. *Privateer*—an armed private ship which bears the commission of a state to cruise during war against the commerce of its enemy. *Swarmed out*—came out of the mole in large numbers. *Covered the gulf*—lay at anchor in the gulf of Genoa. *Allowed*—permitted by Genoa. The Genoese, as neutrals; ought not to have allowed French ships to enter their port, much less permitted them to carry on offensive operations against another nation *To tow out*—to be towed out, leave *Board*—encounter and capture. *Coming in*—entering the port of Genoa *Return into*—take shelter within *Nelson abstained from offering any offence &c*—continued strictly neutral *Offering any offence to the Genoese territory*—carrying on any offensive operations against the French in any part of Italy that was owned by Genoa *O, flag*—he also abstained from insulting the Genoese Government *Complaints*—complaints regarding their breach of neutrality. *It seemed a trial*—they want

ed to compete with him as to. The meaning is:—they complained to him of breaches of neutrality so frequently that he was tired of listening to them.

### Para 34

*The question of neutrality... ..end*—an incident soon happened that caused Genoa to take the part of the French against the allied powers. This incident was the robbing of an Austrian Commissary within Genoese territory. *Commissary*—special officer. *Sleep*—spend the night. *Which the French minister.....neutrality*—which the French were determined to secure in spite of the promise of security which the French minister had given to the Austrian Commissary, in spite of the breach of duty which it involved on the part of the French Captain, in spite of the neutrality which the Genoese were bound to observe by treaty. *Landed*—sent soldiers to Voltri.

[Page 62] *Men*—soldiers. *Publicly*—Genoa declared itself on the side of the French. *Stands of arms*—a stand of arms is a musket and bayonet, cartridge, pouch, &c. *Voltri*—a town of Northern Italy, province of Genoa, on the Gulf of Genoa, 9 miles west of the city. *Savona*—a maritime city of Northern Italy, province of Genoa, 25 miles south-west of Genoa. *Invited*—asked. *Called loudly for*—in great distress asked Nelson. *Checked the plan*—prevented the proposed insurrection of the Genoese peasants. *Knowing her deserts*—conscious of being certain of punishment. *Got within*—took shelter among. *Demand of Nelson respect to the neutral port*—ask Nelson to continue neutral with regard to Genoa, by attempting to punish the offending French frigate in the Gulf of Genoa. *Had allowed ..neutrality*—that they themselves had made an open breach of neutrality with regard to the allied powers, by winking at the robbery of the Austrian Commissary by the French. *It was useless.....longer*—Nelson could not remain neutral, now that the Genoese had openly declared themselves for the French.



## Para 35

*This movement*—Nelson's going to Genoa *Produced the immediate . desisted*—successfully prevented a rising of the Genoese peasants which was imminent *Ill consequences*—disasters, namely, the defeat of the Austrian army by the French *Foresaw*—anticipated *The service it had to perform*—the duty entrusted to him—of driving the French out of the coast of Genoa *Left the command*—resigned *Succeeded* *arrive*—performed the current duties of commander-in-chief, till a permanent incumbent could be appointed *It*—Nelson's squadron. *Fatal*—that brought on a terrible disaster; ruinous. *Error*—blunder *Imbecility*—incompetency; weakness. *Remained inactive*—did not co-operate with Nelson. *Thus summoned*—“loudly called” by the Austrians to prevent a rising of the Genoese peasantry *Allassio*—a seaport town of Italy in the province of Genoa

[Page 63] *Victuallers*—ships carrying provisions *Gunboats*—small war-ships. *Important*—because the destruction of these ships would prevent the French from attacking the Austrians in the rear.

## Para 36

*Demanded satisfaction*—called upon the Genoese Government to give compensation for the robbery they had permitted upon his Commissary *Empty*—deserted by the French *Magazines*—storehouses for ammunition. *Pushed his sentinels to the very gates of Genoa*—was prepared to hold the whole of Genoa against the French *At first*—a little earlier *Timed as the measure was*—in consequence of the delay made to carry out this plan *Useless as it was . . . allies*—in consequence of the plan being immaterial to the main object of the allied powers *In character*—in keeping; consistent. *The whole . conduct*—the dilatoriness which he had invariably displayed. *It is no small proof with which . wrong*—the disaster which immediately followed is a singular proof of the remissness which the Austrian

General showed in beating the French out of the Genoese coast. *According to his own expression*—as he himself said. *Placed in a cleft stick*—put in an awkward situation. There were two courses open to him and both were beset with difficulties. He had (1) to leave Genoa, and prevent a French attack on the left wing of the Austrian army; and (2) to remain at Genoa, to guard the Austrian troops stationed at St Pier d'Arena and Voltri, and prevent the French from keeping a garrison between Voltri and Savona. *The Imperial troops*—the Austrian army. *St Pier d'Arena*—the suburbs west of Genoa. *Lost*—driven out by the French. *Taking post*—stationing troops. *Worsted*—defeated. *Advanced posts*—St Pier d'Arena and Voltri. *Retreat*—retreat of the Austrian troops. *Bocchetta*—a pass leading through the northern Apennines fifteen miles north of Genoa. *Cut off*—prevented. *Loss of the army*—destruction of the Austrian troops. *Would be imputed to him*—he would be blamed for it.

#### Para 37.

*If he were not at Pietra*—i.e. if he did not leave Genoa and go to Pietra, a town of Italy, six miles to the south of Cape Noli. *Flank*—wing; division. *As was to be expected.....operations*—and their defeat seemed most probable owing to their usual incompetency and slowness. *Lay*—impute. *Agamemnon*—i.e. Nelson.

[Page 69] *Attended to both objects*—prevented both the contingencies. *Disconcerted*—prevented the execution of. *In spite of*—notwithstanding any want of assistance from. *Withheld*—not given to him. *Was exposed to them*—faced the French. *Behaved well*—fought gallantly. *Stood its ground*—resisted the French attacks. *In a soldier-like manner*—honourably; not ignominiously. *Pleading*—on the ground of.

#### Para 38

*From that moment*—just as the Austrian Commander left the field. *Not a soldier stayed at his post*—the whole

Austrian army fled in confusion. *Many thousands* .. enemy—the whole army was seized with panic. *Thirty miles from the advanced posts*—though they were very far away from the enemy, who had attacked the advanced posts. *Against my inclination*—I had been obliged to stay at Genoa. *By this means*—as a result of my staying in Genoa. *Kept open*—kept clear of the French, to enable the Austrians to escape through it. *Without stopping*—incessantly. *Puiseur*—a commissioned officer who has charge of the provisions, clothing, &c, and of the public moneys on ship board. *So complete a defeat*—such an utter rout. *And certainly without any reason*—it was certainly a rout that could easily have been prevented. *Thus*—disastrously. *Established*—made it a stable government. *But for us*—had it not been for this blunder of the Austrians, our allies. *Settled*—established. *Volatile*—fickle. *People*—i.e. the French.

### Para 39.

*Deprived the Austrians. ... fleet*—because the French had thrown themselves between the English and the Austrian stations. *Went into dock*—began to be repaired.

[Page 65] *But what stood*—which did not stand. *Secured*—bound. *Thrapped*—This is probably *frapped*, which means to secure a damaged ship by binding ropes tightly round it.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### BATTLE OFF CAPE ST. VINCENT.

#### Para. 1

*Rotten*—irreparably damaged. He means that the Agamemnon, though well repaired, was still far from serviceable. *Satisfied*—pleased. *My opinion of what is likely to happen*—my forecast of the course of future

events. *Had no reserve with me*—freely communicated to me. *Respecting his information and ideas*—all that he knew and all that he believed.

#### Para. 2

*Manner*—friendly manner. *Excited some envy*—made, some of his colleagues jealous of him *It makes no difference to you*—it is all the same to you. You quickly gain an influence over the commander-in-chief, whatever sort of man he might be. *A higher compliment ..paid*—it is the highest possible distinction *Understood*—appreciated. *Left him ..judgment*—gave him all possible liberty of conduct.

#### Para 3

*With his flag*—as an admiral *Ordered home*—sent back to England. *And his flag had not arrived*—and if he had not been appointed admiral. *On many accounts*—for several reasons. *Hoisting his flag*—serving as an admiral *Spare you*—afford to give you leave to go to England.

[Page 67] *Either as captain or admiral*—i.e. in any case, whether you are appointed admiral or not. *Resumed his station*—went back to his post.

#### Para 4

*All places would suit his squadron*—any bay would be convenient for his ships. *Wherever the general came. it*—that he was prepared to support the Austrians in any part of the coast *If there was not a risk ..squadron*—whether Nelson's fleet would not be in danger of being destroyed if he attempted to support the Austrians in any part of the coast. *The admiral*—Nelson. *Co operation*—acting in conjunction with. *Battle of Montenotte*—fought on April 12th, 1796. This was the first victory gained by Bonaparte over the Austrians. *The troops there*—the French garrison at Montenotte. *Drew on*—brought about. *Celerity*—quickness. *Which had ..witnessed*—unprecedented. *Pursued*—followed up. *Dic*

*tated terms of peace*—proposed conditions for a cessation of further warfare, conditions that they were bound to accept. *Court of Turin*—the Sardinian Government. *Piedmont*—the principal province of the kingdom of Sardinia, which includes Turin. *Put into his hands*—we occupied by the French.

#### Para 5

*Impede*—check. *Progress*—advance. *This new conqueror*—Napoleon. *Vessels*—French ships. *Ordnance stores*—ammunition. *Mantua*—a fortified city of northern Italy. It was surrendered to the French under Bonaparte in February, 1797; was taken by the allies in 1799, again ceded to the French in 1801. *Silenced the batteries*—compelled them to cease firing.

[Page 68] *The Directory*—the Government of France, which consisted of a board of five Directors who succeeded the National Convention in 1795. *Councils*—governments. *Improve*—take advantage of.

#### Para 6

*Within his reach*—easily practicable. *Treaties and rights regarded by him*—he was absolutely unscrupulous in his dealings with places that were either neutral or in alliance with him. *The government for acted*—the French Government whose representative he was. *Open*—undisguised. *Both*—rights of neutrality or alliance. *Tuscany*—a duchy of Italy containing Leghorn. *That port*—Leghorn. *Elba*—an island of Italy in the Mediterranean. Its chief town is Porto Ferriajo. *Caprija*—a small island of Italy, in the Mediterranean, 18 miles east of the northern extremity of Corsica. It takes its name from the numerous wild goats found upon it. *Less than forty*—eighteen. See above. *Infamous*—shameful.

#### Para 7

*Taken part*—sided. *Covertly*—secretly. *Compulsory*—peremptory. *Menace*—threat. *Exclude*—not allow them to enter. *Seized*—captured by the English. *Act*.

*of vigor*—vigorous movement *Governments of the Continent*—European powers *Evacuate*—leave *Should form*... *France*—should join France in making war against the English. *From the moment*..... *peace*—Spain, though at first hostile to republican France, made peace with it in 1795. *Now*—October 19th, 1796 *Impolitic*—unwise. *Spared*—avoided. *If the people had at first* ..... *independence*—This seems to have been Southey's confirmed belief, for he recurs to it over and over again.

### Para 8

[Page 69] *Viceroy*—the British Governor of Corsica. *Ignominy*—shame. *Resolution*—order. *Know their own minds*—know what they mean when they issue their orders: their orders are inconsistent with each other. *They at Home*—the Home authorities *Lament*—am sorry they have ever been issued. *In sackcloth and ashes*—i.e. most bitterly; a Biblical phrase suggesting extreme humiliation. *Dishonourable to the dignity of*—disgraceful to. *Equal*—strong enough. *Meet*—oppose. *The world in arms*—the most formidable combination of nations.

### Para 9

*The great body*—the majority. *Satisfied*—contented. *As they had good reason to be*—and justly so. *Sensible*—conscious *Attached*—loyal. *However this may have been*—whether the majority of the Corsicans were satisfied or dissatisfied with the British Government *Naturally and necessarily*—as a matter of course; that is, to save themselves from being ill-treated by the French, who, they knew, would inevitably take possession of Corsica *Partisans of France*—those of the Corsicans who favoured the French. *Took upon them*—undertook to carry on. *Sequestered*—confiscated *Mounted guard*—patrolled. *A plan was laid*—a conspiracy was formed *Saving*—saving them from being confiscated by the Corsicans. *Moored*—anchored. *Batter*—cannonade. *Pointed her guns at*—threatened to shoot.

[Page 70] *Deliberate upon*—think and decide. *Scampered off*—hurried away.

#### Para. 10

*The Commodore*—Nelson *Take*—release, after paying the taxes *Directed*—instructed. *Turned pale*—were greatly afraid *Gave him the keys*—sc. of the warehouse. *Attempt*—sc to molest the English *Levy*—impose. *Duty*—tax *Re-embarked*—taken away from Corsica. *Pay them a disagreeable visit*—go and punish them severely *There were any more complaints*—the Corsicans caused any further hindrances to the peaceful evacuation. *To make the British name respected*—not to allow any Englishman to be insulted. *Quiet*—peaceful. *Public stores*—government property.

#### Para. 11

*Favoured*—supported *Pushed over*—sent. *Cape Corse*—in Corsica *Spiked the guns*—rendered them un-serviceable by driving nails into the touch-holes This is usually done to captured guns which the victors are unable to take with them *Seen the first and the last of Corsica*—he was one of the first Englishmen to occupy Corsica when it became a British possession, he was the last Englishman to leave Corsica when it ceased to be a British possession.

#### Para 12

*Effected*—done *Ordered to hoist...* *Minerve*—transferred to the Minerve. The 'broad pendant' is a swallow-tailed flag marking the presence of a commodore or senior captain of a squadron

[Page 71] *Fell in with*—met *Engaged*—fought with. *Duke of Berwick*—an illegitimate son of James II *Action*—battle *Struck*—surrendered *Conveyed*—carried as a prisoner. *Cast off the prize*—leave the captured Spanish frigate alone *Brought to action*—compelled it to fight. *Trial of strength*—struggle; contest *Wore and hauled off*—changed its course and fled. *Got off*—escaped. *Their*

*own ship*—the 'Sabina.' *His prisoner*—Don Jacobo. *Flag of truce*—a ship bearing a flag of truce, which therefore could not be attacked by the enemy. *Carthagena*—a fortified city and seaport of Spain. *His ancestry*—his being a natural son of King James II. *Consonant to*—worthy of. *Custom*—common practice. *Reputed*—known to be. *His men..... commander*—his men were as gallant as he himself was. *Taken in the prize*—captured by the Spaniards when they recovered the 'Sabina,' which after its capture had been manned by some of the crew belonging to the 'Minerve'

### Para 13

*General action*—regular battle with the Spanish fleet. *The Straits*—the Straits of Gibraltar. *Cape St. Vincent*—in the south-west coast of Spain.

[Page 72] *Shift*—transfer. *In close order*—forming a compact body. *Four decker*—a ship having four decks. *Admiral Parker*—Sir Hyde Parker who commanded the British fleet in the West Indies. In 1801 he was appointed to the chief command of the Baltic fleet. Died in 1807. *Parted company*—left the fleet for some time.

### Para 14

*Suffered*—allowed. *Broke*—came. *Discovered*—revealed. *Concealed their number*—so that the Spaniards still supposed that the English had only nine ships. *Look-out ship*—the ship that goes ahead of the others to bring information of the enemy. *Fancying*—thinking. *Her signal*—her signal intimating that the English fleet numbered fifteen ships of the line and not eight. *Disregarded*—unheeded by the Spanish commander. *So little notice...it*—he continued advancing towards the English with careless intrepidity. *That the English...line*—exaggerating the numerical strength of the British fleet. *Rouse*—make him fight with zeal and caution. *Alarming*—causing panic among. *What was the state*—the utter incompetency. *That miserable government...*



*betrayed*—the government of Charles IV of Spain. *Oppressed*—because his was a tyrannical rule *Degraded*—because his was a corrupted court *Betrayed*—because Spain was soon taken by the French.

[Page 73] *Pasquinade*—lampoon. *Orders of the State*—departments of the Government. *As a gift*—as given away for nothing, because they were worthless. *A handsome gratuity*—a rich reward in addition.

### Para 15

*Form a regular order of battle*—arrange their ships in battle array *Press of sail*—a number of ships pushing forward with determined force. *Came up with them*—reached the Spanish position *Tacked*—changed his direction *Form*—arrange themselves *On the larboard tack*—with the wind blowing on the left side of their ships. *Design*—intention *Their friends*—the remainder of the Spanish fleet *She was so covered . . . intention*—the English could not see her doing it. *The rear*—behind the English fleet. *So warmly received*—so determinedly fired upon by the English *Put about*—turned round and went on the starboard side *In weight of metal*—in the number of guns they had. The fifteen English ships had 1,133 guns, the twenty-seven Spanish ships 2,292. *Tack in succession*—turn not simultaneously, but one after another, so as to get the wind on the other side of their ships *Bearing up*—moving *Going large*—sailing straight across the wind with the sails loose *Engagement*—fighting *To be wore*—to be put on another tack *First-rate*—a first-rate man-of-war *Men-of-war* with 100 or more guns were called first-rates *Apparently unequal*—because the Spanish ships were more numerous than the English *Not really unequal*—because the English made up the inferiority in number by their superior skill

### Para 16

*Respite*—a short period of rest. *Dropped astern*—fell

back. *In a masterly style*—with great skill. *Disdaining*—unwilling to make. *Parade*—show. *Beaten*—defeated. *Pushed up*—sailed onwards. *Set*—spread out. *With every sail set*—as speedily as possible. *Save*—rescue. *His old friend and messmate*—Nelson. *To every appearance*—apparently. *Critical situation*—dangerous position. *The Captain*—Nelson's ship. *Ahead*—at some distance in front. *Crippled*—damaged. *Astern*—behind. *Ranged up*—sailed onwards. *Hauling up*—placing it in an oblique position. *Luffing up*—coming up against the wind. *Fell on board of her*—collided against her, side to side. *In the line*—in a regular battle. *In chase*—for the purpose of a pursuit. *Wheel*—a mechanism which enables the sailors to move the rudder with less exertion. *Shot away*—broken. *Put*—turn. *A-starboard*—towards the right. *Boarders*—those of the crew whose duty is to capture ships

#### Para 17.

*Mizzen-chains*—broad planks projecting behind the mizzen mast. *The sprit-sail yard*—a yard supporting a square sail on the bowsprit.

[Page 75] *Locked in*—enclosed. *The 69th*—the 69th regiment. *Quarter-gallery*—a sort of balcony towards the stern, filled with windows. *Fastened*—closed. The Spanish officers took shelter in the cabin. *Forced*—burst open by the boarders. *Retreating*—fleeing. *Poop*—raised stern. *Ensign*—flag. *Hauling down*—being lowered. That was done to show that the ship was no longer a Spanish ship. *Received their swords*—received their submission.

#### Para 18

*Price*—the captured ship. *Westminster Abbey or victory*—a glorious death or victory. *Assisted him into*—helped him in occupying. *Main chains*—broad planks projecting horizontally from the ship's side just behind

the central mast *His old Agamemnon*—his old sailors who had served under him on board the 'Agamemnon'. *With the utmost coolness*—as if it were a mere matter of course.

[Page 76] *With an Englishman's feeling*—with patriotic fervour *Took him by the hand*—shook hands with him by way of congratulation. *Such another place*—on board an enemy's captured ship *Squadron*—properly means a division of a fleet, here, the whole fleet. *Bruises*—slight wounds.

#### Para 19

*Bring-to*—shorten sail so as not to be separated from one another *Formed*—taken their position in line of battle. *A perfect wreck*—completely shattered *On board her two prizes*—close to the two Spanish ships she had captured. The *Captain's* broadside touched that of the *San Nicholas*, which in its turn lay against the broadside of the *San Joseph*, so that all three were on board each other, that is lying broadside to broadside. *Being altogether undecided* . . . *fleet*—not knowing whether his fleet was fit for battle or not. *Renew the action*—continue the battle *Explicitly*—plainly *Expedient*—wise; prudent. *Delay the business*—postpone the battle *Were for*—declared their willingness to fight immediately.

#### Para 20

*Discontinued*—postponed. *He could not sufficiently thank him*—he was very much indebted to him

[Notes on the Foot-note at pp 76—77.—*Had seen an instance* . . . *selections*—knew the evil of mentioning officers by name. *Contributed very much to the fortune of the day*—was of great help in the achievement of the victory. *Successively*—one after another. *Wore*—changed his course. *Pass over in silence*—make no mention of. *This part of his conduct*—his disobedience of orders *Splendid fault*—a breach of discipline attended by glorious

results. *The illustrious commander-in-chief.....title*—Sir John Jervis, who, as a reward for his victory at the battle of Cape St. Vincent, was made the Earl of St. Vincent. *Less needed*—It was not necessary for Nelson's reputation that it should be added to at the expense of that of others, because he was already a most famous man. *Less desired*—Nelson always generously acknowledged the merits of his colleagues and even his enemies. *Strip*—tear off *A single leaf*—even the smallest. *The honoured wreath*—Fame. In this phrase there is a reference to the reward of a laurel wreath that was given to victors in the Olympic games. *Augmenting*—increasing *That*—the reward. *Detracting to*—diminishing. *Either of those victories*—namely, at the battles of the Nile and Trafalgar ]

[Page 77 ] *Advanced*—promoted. *Rear Admiral*—There are three grades of Admirals. Those of the highest grade are called 'admirals' only, and bear their flags on the main mast, that is, on the central mast, those of the second grade are called 'Vice-Admirals', and bear their flag on the foremast; those of the third grade are called 'Rear-Admirals', and bear their flag on the hindmost mast. *Had the order of the Bath*—was made a Knight of the Order of the Bath. Being a Knight, he is henceforward spoken of as Sir Horatio Nelson, until he became a Lord. The Order of the Bath was so called, because in the middle ages newly appointed Knights were required to take a bath, as a part of the ceremony. *Mayor*—the chairman of the municipality. *Corporation*—municipality.

[Page 78 ] *The freedom of the city was voted him*—he was, by the votes of the municipality, made a free citizen of Norwich. The freemen or citizens of a city have certain privileges, but when the freedom of a city is voted to an eminent man, it is valued rather as a token of honour than for the sake of the privileges. *Handsome words*—congratulations. *Retire from the public eye*—not

to appear in public. *Professional judgment*—naval skill. *Furrowed*—winkled owing to old age. *Who could stand*—no one could help shedding tears of joy. *Services*—exploits. *Sounded*—become known *From the common*. . . *theatre*—by all classes of people. *The field of glory was still open*—he could win yet more distinction.

• Para 21

*Who had now* . *blue*—who was now a rear-admiral. *Of the blue*—of the blue squadron. Admirals, according to the colours of their flags, were divided into (1) admirals of the red, (2) admirals of the white, and (3) admirals of the blue, according to their rank. This distinction is a relic of the time when the English fleets fought their battles divided into three squadrons distinguished by red, white and blue flags. Now all English admirals fly the white flag with the Red Cross of St. George, and the red flag has been assigned to the naval reserve, the blue flag to the mercantile navy. *Shifted his flag to the 'Theseus'*—made the 'Theseus' his flag-ship. *The mutiny in England*—the mutiny of the sailors at Spithead which broke out on April 14th, 1797, and was at last quelled by the influence of Lord Howe. *Some danger* . . . *men*—it was feared that the sailors of the 'Theseus' might break out in mutiny again. *Will shed every drop* . . . *veins*—are prepared to die.

Para 22

[Page 79] *Wherever*—whatever ship. *Restored to order*—pacified. *He may be assured*—he must be sure.

Para 23.

*Cádiz*—the principal trading port in the south of Spain. *Barge*—a narrow light boat used to carry admirals and captains to and from the shore. *Passing*—turning off. *Interposed*—put his head between Nelson and the enemy who was trying to shoot him. *Sabre*—sword. *Desperate*—exceedingly dangerous.

[Page 80] *Disproportion of numbers—odds. Asked—recommended him to the home authorities. If he had served long enough—if he had completed the required minimum period of service Above his situation—like a gentleman's. He was only a menial officer, but his conduct and manners were like a gentleman's Nature certainly intended him for—he had the natural qualities of. Profit.....commander—to get any promotion for which Nelson had a mind to recommend him.*

### Para. 24.

*Rencontre—battle. At the head of—in command of. Teneriffe—the largest island of a group of thirteen islands in the Atlantic, off the North-West coast of Africa. They were known as the Fortunate Islands in early times A report had prevailed—it was rumoured. The viceroy of Mexico—the Spanish Governor of Mexico which was then a Spanish possession. Treasure ships—Spanish galleons laden with precious metals obtained in the mines of Mexico Put—anchored Meditate—resolve upon; think of.*

### Para. 25.

*Santa Cruz—a seaport, capital of the island of Teneriffe and of the Canary Islands Debarcation—disembarkation. Offing—sea-horizon. Inshore—near the coast.*

[Page 81.] *Manned—defended Foiled—frustrated. Circumstances of wind and tide—contrary winds and contrary currents. Made show—pretended.*

### Para. 26.

*Conducted—led Regulate—manage. Cast off—untie; i. e., separate Give a huzza—raise a lusty cry to encourage then fellow-soldiers. Push—sail firmly on. The alarm—bells—bells that are rung in times of danger to give notice to the inhabitants to prepare for an attack. Answered the huzza—i. e., as soon as the Spaniards heard the shout, they concluded that the enemy were approaching to invade their*

place, and so they rang then alarm-bells. *Intrepidity*—bravery. *Missed*—failed to reach *Raging*—dashing violently against the shore *Surf*—waves dashing against the shore *Stove*—broke *All*—all the boats that missed the mole *To the left of it*—these boats were landed on the shore to the left of the mole *Stormed it*—captured the mole by making a sudden assault upon it *Grape*—or grape-shot, a combination of small shot packed in a canvas bag so as to form a cylinder fitting into the bore of the cannon

### Para 27.

[Page 82] *Stepping out of the boat*—landing *A relic*—a cherished memento *Gushed out*—flowed *In great abundance*—copiously *Lacerated*—torn *Vessels*—blood vessels; arteries and veins *Shreds*—small pieces *Sling*—a strip of cloth hung round the neck to support the fore-arm *Grounded*—got fixed on the ground *With the falling tide*—as soon as the ebb tide set in *Close under them that they might be safe*—They were safe in this position because the muzzles of the guns could not be lowered so as to shoot down on them, and would therefore fire over their heads *Look about him*—see what was going on

[Page 83] *Pushed on*—sailed on *Peremptorily*—positively *It is off*—it is amputated

### Para 28.

*Put back*—retreated. *Stove*—were dashed

[Page 84] *The great square*—the market place *On—i e,* to capture *Sergeant*—A non-commissioned officer next in rank above the corporal *To summon it*—to demand its surrender

### Para 29.

*Pikemen*—lancers *Small-arm seamen*—sailors provided with muskets, pistols, &c A certain number of the crew of each man-of-war are especially trained in the use of such weapons *Survivors*—those who had escaped death *Made good*—effected. *What could be done at the citadel*—whether

they could capture it. *Commanded*—defended. *Avenue*—a street shaded over by trees growing on both sides of it. *By every avenue*—from all directions. *Captain Samuel Hood*—Lord Hood's cousin at that time—captain of the *Zealous*. *With a flag of truce*—Showing that he was bearing a friendly message and had no hostile intentions. *One inch*—even the least. *He had no wish.....inhabitants*—because they were innocent. *To treat*—make peace. *Terms*—conditions. *Be provided*—be supplied by the Spaniards with boats, if extra boats were necessary. *Engaging*—promising

### Para. 30.

[Page 85] *Success*—his victory over the English. *Sufficiently complete*—because he was able to save his town from being captured by the English. *Acceded*—agreed. *Journal*—diary. *The terms were agreed to*—the conditions of the treaty had been settled. *The ships were at liberty*—the English had his permission. *To send*—to send their men. *Be off the island*—anchor by the coast of the island. *Strip himself of*—took off. *Take charge of*—carry. *Dispatches*—official letters. *Became the first messenger*. *..defeat*—The Spanish governor gave him letters to be carried to Spain, and in these letters he sent accounts of his victory over Nelson. Nelson thus carried the news of his own defeat to Spain.

### Para. 31.

*In*—including. *Deeply affected*—very sorry. *A burden*—a source of trouble. *Dead to the world*—an obscure and worthless person. *Go hence*—shall die. *Am no more seen*—shall be totally forgotten. *'I go hence...seen'*—This is meant for a quotation from the Bible. Vide St John xvi 10. "I go to the Father, and you see me no more." *If from poor Bowen's loss you...oblige me*—if you consider it right to use the opportunity of obliging me afforded by Bowen's death. The death of Bowen had caused a vacancy among the captains, which Nelson hoped would be filled up by Nisbet's promotion. In accordance with Nelson's wish, Lord St. Vincent made Nisbet a captain, giving him the *Dolphin* hospital-ship.



[Page 86] *Rest confident*—fully hope *Repaid me*—did me a good service *The remains of my carcass*—the little that is left of my worthless self *A phrase* that in his bitterness, he chooses to describe himself *Left-handed*—one who has his right arm cut off *Get to a very humble cottage*—retire to an obscure private life *Make room for*—leave my duties to be performed by *A sounder man*—an officer who will be more useful *Under the same opinion*—expressing the same belief in his worthlessness as he expressed to Lord St. Vincent *It is*, the loss of his right arm *Chance of war*—an accident which every soldier and sailor is expected to meet with *Principally instrumental*—chiefly serviceable *I shall feel rich*—I shall be in no want, I would be quite contented *Think much of*—be anxious for *Mischap*—calamity *My mind has long been made up to such an event*—ever since I entered the naval service I have been prepared to lose one of my limbs in battle

### Para. 32.

*Heal his wounded spirit*—cheer him up in his dejection. *Covered as he was with glory*—for his career had been very distinguished *Not a scrap*—not the least part *Ardor*—zeal *Shot away*—lost with the loss of his arm *He means* that though he has suffered the misfortune of losing his right arm in the king's service, his loyalty was still as strong as before *He was invested*—Nelson had received the title of K C B long ago, but the investiture could not take place then owing to his absence at Teneriffe *So he was invested* on his return to England by George III himself on September 27th 1797 *Memorial*—application for pension

*As a matter of form*—so as to conform to the course officially prescribed in such applications *The sending in of the application for a pension* was a mere matter of form, since it had been decided to grant him the pension before his memorial was received *Called upon*—asked *Exhibited*—gave *Extraordinary catalogue*—long list, *Cutting out of harbour*—capturing ships in harbours by boat attacks

[Page 87.] *Corvettes*—ships of war below the rank of frigates, and carrying not more than twenty guns.

## Para. 33

*Taken up*—tied. *Ligature*—bandage *Irritation*—pain. *Discharge*—flow of blood and pus. *Bringing it away*—removing it. *Intermission*—break *Respite*—rest *Laudanum*—a drug that induces sleep. *Lay there*—lived in that house. *The foremost*—the spokesman. *You shall hear no more.....tonight*—we shall not disturb you again *The feeling of respect and sympathy*—the reverence they had for Nelson's character, and the pain they felt at hearing of his illness *Communicated from one to another*—spread from one party of the mob to another *Under the confusion of such a night*—even during a night when the whole London mob were astir to rejoice.

## Para 34.

[Page 88] *Came away*—dropped *His health established*—he was quite well *St George*—St. George's Church

## Para 35.

*Smart-money*—money given as compensation for injuries. *Put him in good humour with himself*—removed his irritation. *With perfect good-humour*—not in the least disposed to quarrel.

## J. CHAPTER V

## THE BATTLE OF THE NILE

## Para 1.

*Early*—i e in April. *Affectionate solemnity*—they betrayed his love for his son, and were full of religious sentiments. *Prosper your going out and your coming in*—grant you success in all your actions *Heard*—granted by God. *If I should presume..* *How old art thou !*—If I should dare to entertain the hope of seeing you again, I would immediately come to perceive the futility of it in consequence of my extreme old age ; i e , I do not hope to see you again because I am very old and shall soon die *Vale ! Vale ! Domine vale !*—Farewell, farewell ! O Lord, farewell !

## Para 2.

*Was fitting out*—was being fitted out or set ready *Armament*—fleet *Destination*—the place to which it was going *Paramount to every other*—most important *Relinquish*—drop; give up *Inferior moment*—less importance *Detachment*—a division of the fleet only *Sufficient*—so to defeat the French fleet preparing at Toulon *It is to the honor of Earl St Vincent*—Earl St Vincent deserves honour for the fact that

## Para 3

[Page 90] *Certain intelligence*—definite news *Of the enemy's design against Malta*—that the French intended to invade Malta *After-object*—the place they would invade next *Gulf of Lyons*—a gulf in the Mediterranean, on the South east of France, 170 miles long, 90 miles broad *Gale*—storm *Moderated*—abated; became less severe *Top-gallant masts*—the highest of the three parts into which the masts of men-of-war were divided. *Dark*—nightfall *Prepared for a gale*—guarded against the danger of being blown away or upset in the storm, by taking down the topgallant masts and yards which had been got aloft when the storm abated *Nelson's mind was easy*—he was not at all anxious *Main-top mast*—the top mast of the main or middle mast *Went over the side*—fell down *Mizen-top mast*—the smallest mast near the stern of the ship. *Tempestuous*—stormy, and therefore dark and loud *Wear*—turn *Scud*—be cruised violently after a tempest. *Went in three pieces*—was broken into three pieces *Bowsprit*—a large beam or spar projecting over the bow of a ship. *Sprung*—cracked

## Para. 4.

*Broke*—dawned *Remnant*—fragment *Spritsail*—a sail hanging under the bowsprit *Hardly to have been expected*—a very difficult task *The island of Hieres*—a group of small islands in the Mediterranean, near the south coast of France *Drifted*—been driven by the tempest *St. Pietro*—a port in

the south of Sardinia. *Apprehensive*—afraid. *Both vessels*—namely the *Vanguard* as well as the *Alexander* which was taking her in tow. *Cast off*—cease to tow. *With a spirit like his commander's*—as brave and firm as Nelson himself. The *spirit* here especially signifies 'the courage to disobey orders.' *A previous coolness*—an old grudge. Nelson had taken a prejudice against Captain Ball at St. Omer in 1783.

### Para. 5.

[Page 91.] *What*—the accident which *Cold name of accident*—the word accident is used for what people of a more religious turn of mind would call an act of God's mercy. The word "accident" is called a *cold name*, because it betrays a certain want of the warmth of gratitude for God's providential care of His creatures. *It was*—this misfortune happened to me and my ship. *The Almighty's goodness ... unity*—for God in His goodness pleased to correct me of my inordinate pride. *Made me a better officer*—taught me some valuable lessons of naval tactics. *A better man*—taught me some valuable lessons of mortality—made me more conscious of my own weakness and of my dependence on God's help. *Figure*—imagine. *A vain man*—i. e., Nelson himself. *Around him*—under his command. *Who*—the sailors of the squadron. *Looked up to*—depended upon. *Their chief*—Nelson. *That*—so that. *Lowered their flags*—surrendered to them. *On Monday morning*—i. e., only a few hours after. *Dismasted*—disabled. *The meanest frigate*—the smallest ship. *Would have been an unwelcome guest*—could have inflicted severe injury on him.

### Para. 6.

*Nelson had indeed more reason... .. aware of*—Nelson had really good cause to thank God for this storm, for it saved him from being captured by the French fleet. *Preserved*—hidden in the darkness caused by the storm and so escaped defeat and capture. *Thick weather*—storm.

### Para. 7.

*With a becoming spirit*—in pursuance of a bold foreign policy.

## Para. 8.

*The continental possessions of the king of Sardinia*—such as Nice, Savoy, and Piedmont France had received Nice and Savoy by the Treaty of Paris, 1796 *The terms to which he had consented*—the treaty of peace which he had concluded with France *For the purpose of escaping immediate danger* . . . *preserve*—His object in concluding this treaty with France was to save his territories from being conquered by the French, but he found that it was rapidly bringing about the contrary result, for the French were making themselves supreme in his territories *His wretched court*—the contemptible Sardinian Government *The common rights of humanity*—the help and protection which every human being expects of every other

[Page 92] *Measure*—scheme *Make a pretext*—invent an excuse *Interdict*—prohibition *Under his circumstances*—helpless as he was *Suicidal*—ruinous *Regarded*—obeyed *Sir James Saumarez*—an English admiral, who entered the navy in his 13th year He was the second in command at the battle of the Nile. Born in 1757, died in 1836

## Para. 9.

*Thus*—by this accident to his ship in the storm

## Para. 10.

*Made ready for the service*—equipped for battle *Received advice*—heard *Put to sea*—sail *Everything was left to his own judgment*—he was given complete liberty to do whatever he liked

## Para. 11.

[Page 93] *Surprised*—made a sudden attack upon Gozo—a small island to the north-west of Malta *Made all sail*—sailed as fast as he could *For want of them*—because he had no frigates with him. *Spoke three vessels*—had communication with three ships. A ship communicates with another ship at sea by means of flag signals *The Archipelago*—here means the Ægean Sea between Greece and Asia Minor.

The word Archipelago is used as a common name for any tract of sea abounding in small islands. *Neither was there any account of them*—nor could he get there any information of their whereabouts. *Put the city in a state of defence*—prepare for an attack or siege. *Shaped his course*—sailed. *Caramania*—a province of Asia Minor to the north of the Taurus mountains. *Candia*—an island of the Mediterranean situate to the south of the Grecian Archipelago.

### Para. 12.

*It would have been his delight*—i. e. he was anxious to do so, because he was confident that “on a wind” the superiority of English seamanship would give him a great advantage. *Tried Bonaparte*—fought a battle with him. *On a wind*—against the course of a wind, i. e., when the wind was blowing in a direction opposite to that in which the ships meant to sail. *It would have been the delight of Europe*—the whole of Europe would also have rejoiced in the defeat of Bonaparte. *And the blessing of the world*—and the world would have been saved from a cruel tyrant. *Myriads*—large numbers. *Who would have been preserved by that day's victory*—whose lives would have been saved if Nelson had met Napoleon on that day, and fought and defeated him. Had Napoleon sustained this defeat at what was then the outset of his career, he would not have entered upon his subsequent wars in which so many people have been killed. *Essential*—important.

[Page 94] *It would have spared him*—he would have been saved from. *His defeat at Acre*—In 1799 Napoleon was repulsed from Acre which he had laid siege to for 61 days. It was successfully defended by a Turkish garrison assisted by Sir Sidney Smith. *His only disgrace*—His defeat at Acre is called a disgrace because the walls of Acre were in a ruinous state and seemed unable to resist the force of Napoleon. *To have been defeated by Nelson* . . . *disgraceful*—because Nelson was the representative of the invincible naval might of England. *His after enormities*—the horrible crimes which he subsequently committed. Southey is probably

referring to his massacres in Cairo, his murder of the Bourbon princes on a charge of conspiracy, his giving away of thrones and kingdoms to his own friends and relations, the slaughter of the Peninsular war which cost France 400,000 lives, the misery he inflicted upon France itself by his narrow commercial policy formed with the intention of ruining England, the loss of 475,000 of his soldiers in his disastrous Russian campaign, the loss of another 50,000 in his victory at Leipzig *Hitherto his career had been glorious*—He had successfully recovered Toulon for the French in 1793 ; he had defeated or destroyed four armies, each stronger than his own,—that of Boileau, at Cairo, Montenotte, Millesimo, Dego, and the Bridge of Lodi , that of Wurmser, at Castiglione, Roveredo, and Bassano , that of Alvinzi, at Arcola, Rivoli, and Mantua , and that of Prince Charles, whom he pursued into Germany as far as Leoben, upon the road to Vienna *The baneful principles of his heart*—Southey entertained a very low opinion of Napoleon's character, as will be seen, from the following extracts of a poem he wrote in 1814 —

But Evil was his Good,  
For all too long in blood had he been nurst,  
And ne'er was earth with verier tyrant curst

Bold man and bad,  
Remorseless, godless, full of fraud and lies,  
And black with murders and with perjuries,

Himself in Hell's whole panoply he clad ;  
No law but his own headstrong will he knew,  
No counsellor but his own wicked heart,  
From evil thus portentous strength he drew,  
And trampled under foot all human ties,  
All holy laws, all natural charities

.....  
Woe to the world, if Bonaparte's throne  
Be suffered still to stand !

.....  
Death only can for his foul deeds atone ;  
That peace which death and judgment can bestow,  
That peace be Bonaparte's—that alone !

The 'baneful principles' he was thinking of were :—his vulgar arrogance, meanness, falsehood, utter disregard of moral obligation, and a reckless disregard of human life if any sacrifices would further his ambitious, selfish aims. *Passed his lips*—been expressed in words Southey does not wish it to be understood that his character was hitherto free from those vices ; he means only to say that he had not then openly manifested them in speech and conduct. *History would have represented him as*—he would have been known to future generations *A soldier of fortune*—a soldier who lent his services to France for the sake of profit A 'soldier of fortune' is one who sells his services for money with little or no regard for the cause he is asked to support. Soldiers who fight for their own country, even when they receive pay, are not called soldiers of fortune Southey calls Napoleon a soldier of 'fortune, because being a Corsican, he fought for France Napoleon's admirers would reply that, as Corsica was subject to France, Napoleon had every right to be considered a Frenchman *Served the cause in which he engaged*—upheld the French interest. *Romantic obscurity*—one of which very little was known for certain, like the wars one reads of in books of romance *Hung over*—characterized : marked *Perpetration*—the act of committing *Incarinated*—reddened : i. e. rendered guilty *Deeper*—i. e. more heinous *Dye*—i. e. guilt *The purple*—i. e., the imperial authority A purple robe was the distinguishing dress of the Roman Emperors; hence 'the purple' here symbolises imperial authority Purple is a mixture of red and blue *A romantic obscurity would have hung.....* *committed them*—Explanation—Had Napoleon received this timely check at the outset of his career, nothing would have been known about his expedition to Egypt, and he would not have been enabled to commit those horrible crimes which have more brutalized his character than brought the corresponding advantage of imperial authority to which he rose by virtue of those crimes *Those acts of perfidy*—Southey is obviously alluding to (1) Napoleon's invasion of Egypt, (in 1798) which was a province of the Sultan of



Turkey with whom France was then at peace; (2) to his seizure of four border fortresses of Spain, although professedly at peace with the Spanish king *Midnight murder*—Southey here alludes to the execution of the Duke of Enghien, a prince of the Bourbon dynasty, on a charge of conspiracy. His trial, which was a mere nominal one, commenced at eleven o'clock on the night of March 20th, 1804 and he was executed at six o'clock on the following morning *Usurpation*—The reference here is (1) to Napoleon's usurpation of the sovereignty of France with the title of Emperor of the French in 1804; (2) to his usurpation of the throne of Holland which he gave to Louis Bonaparte, his brother, in 1806, (3) his seizure of the Spanish crown which he gave to another brother, Joseph, in 1808, (4) his capture of Naples which he gave to his brother-in-law, Prince Murat, (5) his giving away the kingdom of Westphalia to his youngest brother, Jerome, in 1807, *Remorseless tyranny*—cruel oppression. *Consigned his name to universal execration*—made him one whom every one names with a deadly curse. *Now and forever*—Not only was Napoleon's name an object of curse in his own times, but it will remain so through all subsequent ages

### Para. 13

*Concerning*—thinking, with the impression *The motives upon which they were founded*—the reasons which led him to form those plans *Vindication*—justification, defence. *Anticipated*—answered before it was made *Who was I*—This ought to have been 'whom was I' *Chose to keep me in ignorance*—did not like to give it to me *Wait patiently*—remain inactive *Heard certain account*—received definite information *Before I could hear of them*—i.e., if I had waited till I got certain news *They would have been in India*—this delay on Nelson's part would have enabled the French to push from Egypt to India. The French had promised help to Tippu Sultan of Mysore against the English *Do nothing*—wait idly *Made use of my understanding*—acted as I thought most prudent *I am before your lordship's judg-*

ment—I hereby submit myself to be tried by you ; adjudge me to be guilty or innocent as you please. *Under all circumstances—on whatever grounds* )

[Page 95] *Wrong—guilty.. For the sake of our country to set an example of justice. Superseded—placed lower in rank to other admirals who should be promoted in my place I hold the same opinion—I still believe that the object of the French expedition is Egypt : I believe that they will come to Egypt, though they have not yet done so Cape Passaro—a Cap on the coast of Greece. Steering for—proceeding to. By that opinion I must stand or fall—my conduct must be approved if that judgment is right, I must be punished if that judgment is wrong.*

#### Para. 14.

*Not to begin a defence.. ... accused of error—one should not try to vindicate himself till one is proved guilty. This is a very prudent counsel, breach of which often leads to the detection of guilt Fullst reasons for what he had done—a complete explanation of his conduct Expressed in such terms as would crince—in language forcible enough to show From the strongest conviction of being right—in the best faith Fair it in the same light—readily believe that Nelson had acted in good faith. Judged rightly of the public—was quite right in his opinion of public criticism. Those first impulses are generally founded upon just feelings—public criticism, if not subsequently modified by external influences, is, in most cases, unbiassed, i. e. the public always judge a man's conduct according to its real merit. Though from want of sufficient information. ... erroneous—though on account of their ignorance of the real facts of the case. the public often make mistakes in judging of a man's conduct. The public are easily misled—it is so easy to misrepresent facts so as to prejudice public opinion There are always persons. .. them—the public are seldom allowed to judge of a man's conduct dispassionately, for his opponents always twist the facts and try to evoke hostile criticism from the public Had not yet attained that fame ..... silent—was not yet so highly*

renowned as to be safe from the effects of the calumnies circulated against him The public do not listen to malicious rumours about great heroes, for they believe them to be false. But this is only so in the case of great heroes Nelson was not yet a great hero of that type *Returned after an unsuccessful pursuit*—gone back to Sicily after vainly trying to find the French in Egypt *It was said*—his opponents misled the public to declare *Impeachment*—prosecution ‘Impeachment’ differs from ‘prosecution’ in that it is not carried on in the ordinary law courts, but before some special body of judges Such a mode of trial is adopted in the case of a high officer of state who is accused of high treason or neglect of duty *Censured*—reprimanded *Upon*—to perform

### Para. 15.

*Baffled*—i. e., unsuccessful, being baffled *Neapolitan ministry*—Government of Naples *No assistance*—sc. by way of allowing them to procure any provisions in their territory *Endanger their peace with &c*—offend the French and cause them to declare war against him *Lady Hamilton*—wife of Sir William Hamilton, the British envoy in the court of Naples. *At court*—i. e., over the Queen of Naples *He procured*—i. e., Nelson got the Government of Naples to send. *Secret*—confidential, kept secret from the French *Everything which he wanted*—all necessary supplies *Syracuse*—a sea port town of Sicily *Timely*—which came at a time when he most needed them. opportune. *He always said*—it was his firm belief *Beyond vague conjecture*—except uncertain guesses, anything definite *Gone a round of*—travelled over an aggregate of *At this season of the year*—in the hottest and most unhealthy part of the year

[Page 96] *Expedition*—rapidity *Incredible*—so great that people would not believe it to be true. *Here I am*—I am at Syracuse in Sicily *As ignorant of the situation of the enemy*—knowing as little of the whereabouts of the French *Every moment I regret . . . me*—He means that the frigates would have been of great service to him.

*I could not have wanted information—I was sure of getting reliable news of the French. Strongly secured—securely stationed. In port—in some well-defended harbour. Get at—find and attack. Shift my flag into some other ship—take another ship as my flagship. Hardly any person—no other officer. In such a wretched state—with such an ill-fitted fleet under his command, such a damaged ship for his flagship.*

### Para. 16.

*(Irritated—irritated. With the true heart of a hero—struggling heroically against despair, with the fortitude of a truly great man. Still—even when so long and so repeatedly unsuccessful in his attempts to find the French. Full hope—confident that he would at last succeed in finding the French. Thanks to your exertions—a matter for which I am indebted to what you did for me. Victuated—replenished our supply of food. Watered—replenished our supply of fresh water. Watering—because I have replenished my supply of water. The fountain of Arethusa—a celebrated fountain in the island of Ortygia which forms part of Syracuse. The god of the river Alpheus (a famous river in Peloponnesus) fell in love with the nymph Arethusa and pursued her (from Greece to Sicily) till she was changed into a fountain by Diana. Watering at the fountain of Arethusa—victory—Nelson means that since he has replenished his supply of water in a place sanctified by mention in classical mythology, he has every hope of success. It is doubtful if Nelson really wrote this, as “the classics were not in his line.” With the first breeze—as soon as the wind is favourable. Crowned with laurel—victorious. The laurel is the symbol of victory, because among the Greeks and Romans victors were rewarded with a laurel crown. Covered with cypress—dead. The cypress was used by the Romans at their funerals, and is therefore the symbol of mourning or death. The last phrase is borrowed from Opdam’s speech as he sailed to the battle of June 4th, 1665, mentioned in Campbell’s ‘Lives of the Admirals,’ a book well known to Nelson. Earl St. Vincent he assured—The usual construction would be—‘he assured Earl St. Vincent.’*

*Above water*—at sea at all. By selecting these words Nelson insinuates—‘if the French are not drowned in the sea, which I hope they are, or if not, may they soon be!’ *Bound for*—on their way to *Be they bound to the Antipodes*—even if they mean to go to the other side of the world. *Your lordship may rely*—rest assured. *Bringing them to action*—Compelling them to fight with me.

### Para. 17.

*The Morea*—the modern name of what in ancient Greek history is known as Peloponnesus. *Beyond measure*—i.e., very greatly. *Elduded him*—escaped his notice. *The tediousness of the nights*—being anxious and irritated he felt the nights to be very difficult to pass. During the day he had plenty to occupy his attention, but during the night he could not rest for anxiety. *Impatient*—eager for day to dawn. *Officer of the watch*—the man whose duty was to tell off the different watches at night. *Called on*—ordered. *The hour*—what o’clock it was. *Convince him that it was not yet day break*—he would not believe the watchman if he said that it was still night, for in his impatience he felt the hours to be unusually long and hence expected day to dawn much earlier. *Who measured time by his own eagerness*—This is the reason why Nelson refused to believe the watchman if he told him that the day had not yet dawned. The reason was that in his impatience for day the night seemed too long. *Made*—reached. *Gulf of Coron*—a gulf in the coast of Peloponnesus.

[Page 97] *Stood*—sailed. *For*—in the direction of. *They came in sight of Alexandria*—they reached a spot at sea, where from the mast-head they could see Alexandria. *Vacant and solitary*—there were no ships lying in harbour. *When they saw it last*—when Nelson had been there on a former occasion. *Exultation*—joy. *The tri-colour flag*—the French flag. The French flag, after the Revolution, was a flag of three colours—red, white and blue. *The walls*—i.e., the walls of the city of Alexandria, showing that the French had taken possession of the town. *Made the signal for the*

*enemy's fleet*—indicated by flag signals that the French fleet was in sight. *Were making*—were being made. *Rose from the table*—finished their dinner. (*Before this time to-morrow*—in less than twenty-four hours. *Gained a peerage*—been rewarded by being made a Lord. He means he will have gained a splendid victory over the French. *Or Westminster Abbey*—or have been dead. He means he will either gain a splendid victory or die fighting. A similar remark is attributed to Nelson when he was going to take possession of the *San Joseph* (See p 75, para. 18) But such language is more natural here just before the commencement of a great battle, than when he was about to capture a Spanish ship on which little resistance was to be met.)

### Para. 18.

*Made an angular passage for*—taken a circuitous route towards. *More straight for*—taken a short cut *Materially*—considerably. *Comparative*—as compared with the French fleet. *In close order*—in a compact body. Because it was more difficult to defeat a close body of ships, than one spread loose. *Hazy*—misty. *Discovering*—seeing *It appeared*—it was found out. *Journals*—diaries; i. e., record of events from day to day *Taken*—captured. *The two fleets*—the English fleet and the French fleet. *Crossed*—passed each other *During the return to Syracuse. .... feu*—sc. and therefore the English were not very careful in being on the look out for them.

### Para. 19.

✓ *Effected his landing*—landed his soldiers. (*Why Bonaparte, having effected... explained*—The French fleet simply carried Napoleon's soldiers to Egypt for his invasion of that country, and were not meant for fighting a naval battle. As soon therefore as the soldiers had landed, the work of the ships was finished, and they should have been sent back to France. But Napoleon allowed them to remain at anchor in Aboukir Bay,—nobody knows why) *Detained*—kept waiting. *Admiral Brueys*—the commander of the French fleet. *After that officer's death*—This phrase has

been employed to give strength to Southey's statement that it was Napoleon's habit to tell lies, and shift all blame to others *Lingered*—delayed *Contrary to orders*—though Napoleon had ordered him to go back to France. *Wreck time and neglect had ruined*—The reason why the French admiral could not enter the port of Alexandria was that the harbour was in a very unsafe condition, owing to its being an old harbour and also to its want of repairs *Moored*—anchored )

[Page 98] *Aboukir bay*—a bay between Alexandria and the Rosetta branch of the Nile The battle is called the battle of the Nile, though it was not fought in the river, but at a considerable distance from it

*Compact*—close *Headmost*—most advanced. *Shoal*—a shallow part of the bay *Curve*—a segment of a circle " *The line of deep water*—the line where the shoal ended and deep water began *Lives*—a French coin equivalent to about 9½d *In—i e*, inside the harbour *Take charge of*—undertake to guide *Drawing more than twenty feet*—requiring more than twenty feet depth of water to float *Made the best of his situation*—utilized his present position, though it was not the very best as much as he could *An open road*—a part of the sea not defended by any sufficient barrier against the wind and waves *Commussary*—the officer who is in charge of the fleet's provisions *Moored*—anchored *Bid defiance to*—be sure of victory over. *Presumption*—bold supposition *Could not then be thought unreasonable*—was not absolutely baseless, as such things had lately happened, (as the next sentence tells us.) *In a similar manner—i. e*, in an open roadstead like the one in which Nelson had now moored *St Lucia*—one of the Windward Islands, in the West Indies, about 30 miles to the South of Martinique The English first settled in the island in 1637, in 1763 it was ceded to France The English took it in 1779, but restored it after the peace in 1783 *Comte d'Estaing*—a French commander, who served under Count Lally in India where he was made prisoner by the English; but was released on

parole. In the American war he was employed as vice-admiral and general of the French armies, and took the island of Grenada. He was guillotined in 1793.

### Para. 20.

*During the whole pursuit*—all the time Nelson had been sailing in search of the French fleet. *Execute*—work

-[Page 99] *Take into calculation*—consider and discuss. *Principles of tactics*—the plan on which he meant to fight battles *Determined upon*—settled *Anchor by the stern*—cast anchor from the hind part of the ships. The advantage of anchoring by the stern was that the English ships became stationary as soon as their anchor caught the ground and were able immediately to engage the enemy.

### Para. 21.

(*Intuitive genius*—prompt and unerring decision. *Swing*—turn with the change of wind and tide *Station*—anchor ; keep *Quarter*—the part of a ship's side which lies towards the stern *Doubling on the enemy's ships*—placing one English ship on each side of each of the French ships. *The thought was not lost upon Nelson*—Nelson took care to remember the plan and utilize it when occasion came. *Comprehended*—fully understood. *The scope of the design*—all the results that were expected from this plan. *What will the world say?*—it will amaze the world *There is no if in the case*—the matter admits of no doubt at all : i. e., we are sure to gain the victory *Who may live to tell the story*—which of us will be killed, and which saved *Is a very different question*—cannot be determined with the same degree of confidence.)

### Para. 22.

*Assailed*—met. *Shower*—discharge. *The island*—the Delta of the Nile. *Revered in silence*—i. e., the English ships were unable to return the fire. *Aloft*—up on the masts. *Furling*—gathering up *Below*—down in the hold. *Tending*—looking after ; i. e., hauling them, so as to raise the



yards well above the middle part of the deck, in order that they might not get entangled with the rigging of other ships *Braces*—ropes used to bring the yard-arms into any position,

### Para. 23.

[Page 100.] *Decoy the English*—allure them into a dangerous position *Tempt them*—allure them to sail. *Lure*—attempt to put them into a dangerous position by deceit *Led the way*—was the first to advance *Out sailing*—sailing so fast that she left the *Zealous* behind *Disputed this post of honour with him*—kept sailing very fast to have the honour of leading the attack *In with the land*—close to the shore *Manned*—supplied with artillery men. *Flw himself*—anchor his ship *Inner bow*—the side of the ship towards the shore. *His anchor hung*—his anchor did not drop immediately. *Drifted*—sailed on *Before it was clear*—before the anchor got free of the object which obstructed its dropping straight down, i. e., while the anchor was still hanging *Inside of her*—by her inner bow *Took the station*—occupied the position. *Doubled*—passed round *Van*—front line *Bore on*—were pointed at, *Annoyed her*—was hampering her free movements. *Receiving and returning the fire*—being fired upon by the French ships and firing the French ships *Fixed herself*—anchored *Struck*—i. e. surrendered. *Brought down*—knocked off by shots,

### Para. 24.

[Page 101] *Outer side*—the side of the ships towards the open sea *Lest they should be shot away*—to have a sufficient number to serve as rallying posts for his fleet, in case one or more of them were shot away *That they should be struck* .. *possibility*—That was Nelson's only object in having so many flags flying, for every British admiral considered it an impossibility that any British ship should lower its flag in token of surrender. The sentence is one among many others that shows Southey's patriotism. *He veered half a cable*—he

let out half a cable : i. e. he dropped his anchor half the distance. The average length of the cable that fastens the anchor is 720 feet. *Under cover of which*—concealed by the smoke of his guns. *Ahead*—in advance of. *Cleared*—i. e., the gunners that were killed or wounded were taken away and others took their places. *Three times cleared*—three successive sets of artillerymen were killed. *Next ahead*—immediately in front of the “Vanguard.” *Took off the fire of the Aquilon*—placed herself between the Aquilon and the Vanguard, so that the Aquilon now fired upon the *Minotaur* instead of the “Vanguard,” which it would otherwise have done. *Dropped her anchor on the starboard bow*—i. e., anchored on the right side of this French ship. *Bruey’s own ship*—the French admiral’s flagship. *Weight of ball*—number of guns. *Swung clear*—disentangled herself by swinging. *Detached*—separated from the fleet. *Night closed*—it was night. *There was no other light except*—it was not a moonlit night, and hence it was very dark.

#### Para. 25.

[Page 103] *Came on*—joined the battle. *Sounding*—measuring the depth of the sea as she proceeded, lest she should run aground. *Increased the difficulty of the navigation*—made it more and more difficult for her to sail safely. *After having found eleven fathoms water*—after she was in a fairly deep part of the sea. *The lead*—the sounding line. *Hove*—raised up for another sounding. *Fast aground*—firmly fixed on the shoal. *Get him off*—rescue his ship from the shoal. *Beacon*—a signal of danger. (A ‘beacon’ is properly a lantern burning on some pillar built over a shoal to warn mariners. *Holding*—following. *Reef*—a chain of rocks near the shore. *In a manner*—in such a good position.

#### Para. 26.

*Bearing down*—sailing in a fair wind. *What seemed*—a ship that looked. *A strange sail*—like a French ship. *Mizen peak*—the hinder end of the spar supporting the hindmost sail of the ship. *With great judgment*—very wisely. *Loose*

—unfurled. He knew that the English ships had no time to furl up their sails, while the French ships, that had cast anchor long before the English, had enough time to do so. *Overpowered*—defeated. *Gone overboard*—fallen into the sea. *Drifting*—sailing with the current. *Her station*—the place she occupied. *At this important time*—when she was defeated and disabled and had moved away from the line. The time was important, because had her place not been quickly filled up by another English ship, the French would have been encouraged and the English would have been disheartened by this defeat of one English ship. *The French admiral*—viz, the *Orient*. *Raking him*—firing shots on his ship lengthwise.

### Para. 27.

[Page 103] *Athwart hawse*—across the stern. The 'hawse' is that part of the bows that contains holes for the cables to pass through. *Rake both*—fire on both ships simultaneously, by directing the shots which missed the *Franklin* to pass on and hit the *Orient*. "To rake a ship is to fire shots through her lengthways, from the stern to the stem or *vice versa*. Such firing is peculiarly effective, as the shot has, in its course through the length of the ship, more opportunities of doing damage than if it merely traversed her breadth from broadside to broadside" (MacMillan)

### Para. 28.

*The two first ships*—This ought to be "the first two ships"—because the French ships were in a single line. *Within*—in less than.

### Para. 29.

*Langridge shot*—shot made of nails, screws, bolts and other pieces of iron tied together. *Mortal*—fatal; would result in his death. *Flap*—a portion. *In total darkness*—unable to see any object. *Scarcely to be conceived*—inconceivable. *Cock pit*—the surgeon's room under the lower deck of a man-of-war. *Heroism*—fortitude. *Natural*—because the

surgeon loved Nelson more than the other man he was treating *Pardonable*—because Nelson's life was more valuable to the nation than that of any other ; also because Nelson's case was a more serious one. *The poor fellow*—the wounded sailor. *Under his hands*—being treated *Will take my turn*—will not take an undue precedence in the matter of treatment over those who have been wounded before me.

### Para. 30.

*Suffer*—allow. *Examined*—sc not to speak of its being dressed.—*Properly*—sc. and not only hurriedly and in an imperfect way. *Deliver*—give to his wife. *What*—a message, he gave the Chaplain which he supposed, &c. *Dying remembrance*—message given at the time of death, last greetings.

[Page 104.] *Mindful*—remembering.

### Para. 31.

*The most anxious silence*—every one waited in great suspense to hear what the doctor had to say regarding its seriousness. *Superficial*—affecting only the surface of the head, without touching the vital organ the brain. *Deeper pleasure than the unexpected* . . . danger—his joy was greater than the joy of hearing that his life was safe. *Affected*—touched with pity. *Eagerness*—impulsiveness. *Contrived to trace a few words*—managed with great difficulty to write a few words in very illegible characters. *Marking*—recording. *Devout sense*—gratitude to God. *Found his way up*—went up to the deck of his ship.

### Para. 32.

*A fourth*—sc. wound. *Mastered*—spread to every part of the ship. *Prodigious*—huge.

[Page 105.] *Blew up*—burst. *Felt to the very bottom*—shook them all over. *Momentarily*—every moment. *Heat and fury of the action*—when the battle raged at its highest. *Port*—a passage-way in the sides of a ship. *Stood*—stayed in the

midst of *Exploded*—raised up in the explosion *It is upon record*—history says *A battle*—Probably Southey is thinking of the battle of Lake Thrasimene in the Second Punic war, B. C 217. *Broken off*—interrupted Southey is not quite correct here *There was* an earthquake in the midst of the battle of Lake Thrasimene, but the battle went on as if nothing had happened—it was *not* interrupted *Like a miracle*—as a direct interference of God *Equalled the sublimity*—been so awful *Co-instantaneous*—simultaneous *Its circumstances*—the incidents following this pause.

### Para. 33.

*Casa-Bianca and his son, a brave boy*—This boy is celebrated by Mrs. Hemans in her poem called *Casa Bianca* after him According to the story the boy would not leave the ship without his father's orders, which, as his father was lying below unconscious, he never received, and so was burnt to death *Masses*—portions of the ship *Apprehensions*—fear lest the English ships should catch fire. *Any other danger*—the strength of the French fleet

[Page 106] *Post fire*—a tube filled with inflammable matter used to fire guns. *Main royal*—a light sail above the main topgallant sail *Provided*—taken precautions.

### Para. 34.

*Stood out to sea*—sailed towards the open sea. *A name strong enough*—a word sufficiently expressive

### Para. 35.

*In a villainous manner*—wickedly. *Cartel*—a paper containing the terms on which prisoners are to be exchanged.

### Para. 36.

[Page 107] [Foot Note p 107] *Delivered up the Mediterranean.* *England*—made the English masters of the Mediterranean sea. *The Porte*—the Emperor of Turkey *Declaring against it*—turning against the French *Brought France within a hair's breadth of her ruin*—very nearly ruined

France. *Reviving*—causing again. *The smouldering flames of war*—the old war which had been concluded *Suarnow*—a Russian general who, in the war with France in 1799, marched into Italy and won great distinction in that campaign ]

*Small craft*—boats. *Bomb-vessels*—ships carrying bomb shells. *Were I to die..... stamped on my heart*—i. e., my greatest pain at this moment is due to want of frigates *What*—the distress. *Sunk*—died *Had done well*—had performed their duties satisfactorily.

### Para. 37.

*Overland*—passing chiefly by the land route *Pests*—plague He calls the French the plague of mankind out of contempt

[Page 108] *Letters of credit*—papers requesting the East India Company to pay his expenses on the journey. *Our settlements*—the British possessions in India. *Put on their guard*—given them previous warning to prepare against a possible French invasion *Upon a scale proportionate..... danger*—on an extensive scale, because the danger was believed to be very great.

### Para. 38.

*At the summit of glory*—one of the most famous men of his time *Respite*—a brief interval of peace *Had called upon all true believers &c*—had proclaimed what the Mussalmans call a *Jehád*. *True believers*—Mohamedans *These blessed habitations*—This is language quite in keeping with oriental ornament Refers to Egypt *Pasha*—the title of the Turkish governor of a province. *I urn night into day*—work hard and ceaselessly. *Grand Seignior*—a title of honour given to the Sultan of Turkey. *Pelisse*—a cloak worn by high dignitaries *Sables*—a material made of the skins of an animal, called the sable, found in the North of Asia whose black fur is very valuable *Aigrette*—an ornament for the head, consisting of a feather decorated with diamonds. *Badge*

—decoration *If it were worth a million .. your possession—i. e.*, I value the present not for its price but because I shall be able to give it to you *In a spirit worthy of imitation—very generously Sequin*—a Turkish coin worth about nine shillings

[Page 109] *Set*—ornamented, studded *In whom the better part of his strangely compounded nature predominated—i. e.*, who had not yet displayed those evil qualities which were strangely mixed up with noble qualities in his character The Emperor Paul I of Russia, who ascended the throne in 1796, was for some years a good ruler But his real character soon afterwards displayed itself, and he made himself obnoxious by acts of petty tyranny, and frivolous meddling in matters of dress and ceremonial In 1799 he entered into an alliance with Austria against France, but suddenly changing his views he formed an alliance with Napoleon, and, because England would not cede to him Malta he seized the persons and property of the English in his dominions He died in 1801

### Para. 39.

*Augmentations*—additions *Armorial ensign*—coat of arms. *Chief*—the upper part of the shield *Undulated*—separated from the rest of the shield by a wavy (undulated) line. *Argent*—white *There on—i. e.*, in the upper part of the shield were painted *A palm-tree*—This bearing is emblematic of victory The palm-tree was painted as growing out of the waves, representing a naval victory *Issuant*—issuing, or coming up, or represented as growing *Dexter*—the right side of the shield *Sinister*—the left side of the shield. *Proper*—painted in their natural colours *Crest*—an appendage to the shield, placed over it, and generally forming part of the coat-armour. *Or*—of a yellow colour *The chelengk or plume*—“aigrette” *The Turl*—the Sultan of Turkey

[Foot note p 108] *Fixed on*—selected *Jortin*—an eminent English divine, who in 1772 published some Latin poems which were very popular *Breathes a spirit*—displays an ardent admiration for Nelson *Concurrant paribus cum ratibus rates*—boats were running equal with boats.

*Spectent numina ponti, et*—may be looking the divine will  
e seas, and

*Incongruity*—inconsistency *Supporters*—figures of men  
animals represented as supporting the escutcheon on the  
ght and left hand. *If possible*—This implies that Nelson's  
at of arms is the worst specimen of modern armoury *Hierogly-  
phics*—puzzling figures of objects The hieroglyphics pro-  
ly are the sacred characters of the ancient Egyptian lan-  
age in which figures are used for letters of the alphabet.  
*Quarter king-at-arms*—the principal herald of England, being  
herald belonging to the order of the "garter," and sovereign  
er all other officers in the Herald's Office. *Glorious event  
victory* ]

#### Para. 40.

[Page 110] *Moved*—proposed *A higher degree of rank*—  
higher order of nobility than a mere barony, such as an  
ldom *Mr Pitt*—the Prime Minister *Enter into*—dis-  
ss *Co-equal with the British name*—Nelson will be known  
herever Englishmen are known *On record*—mentioned in  
story. *Whether he had been* . . . *earl*—what rank was con-  
ned upon him *By representing all titles* . . . *superfluous*—  
the ground that the fame of a hero does not rest on his  
les *If our laws had so permitted*—if it was at all possible  
confer the title of 'prince' on any one outside the royal  
mily. *He who received it would have been Nelson still*—i. e.,  
elson would be known to posterity by his name and not by  
s titles *That name he had ennobled* . . . *nobility*—he had  
ade himself too famous to need any titles to give him cele-  
ity *It was the name by which England loved him*—i. e.,  
had served his country and endeared himself to her when  
had no titles to distinguish him *Celebrated*—did honour  
*Endure*—last. *Be held in remembrance*—not be for-  
otten.

[Page 111] *The fashion of his coronet*—The various ranks  
peers wear coronets of different fashions, from the coronet  
the duke ornamented with eight strawberry leaves down  
the baron's coronet with its six pearls. *The Red book*—the



"Civil List" (as it is called in India) *Precedency*—the right of going before others by virtue of higher rank. *The drawing room*—i.e., public receptions *The drawing room and the ball*—These represent 'social ceremonies' or 'society' *That Nelson's honours were affected* .. *administration*—Pitt's negligently ministry must be blamed for the fact that Nelson received only a peerage and no higher rank *The degree of rank which they thought* .. *services*—but because he got only a low title it must not be supposed that his services were little: his services *were* great, it was the ministry who were ungrateful

#### Para. 41.

*Formalities*—polite words *Magnitude*—greatness. *The Turkish Company*—a company of English merchants formed for the purpose of trading with Turkey *A piece of plate*—a large ornament made of gold or silver.

#### Para. 42

[Page 112] *The Captain and first lieutenant of the Culloden*—Trowbridge and Davison respectively. *Thoroughly established*—irreproachable *So soon*—in such a short time *In the service*—in the whole navy

#### Para. 43

*Engaged*—commissioned for the war *The commander-in-chief*—Earl St Vincent *Than any of us*—than that of any of us. *Terms*—language. *Warm*—expressive of his admiration for Trowbridge *To benefit by anything I could say*—to need any further remarks from me *In the full tide of happiness*—enjoying the great happiness of fighting the battle *Misery*—the disappointment of not getting promotion *Misfortune*—the disappointment of not being able to take part in the battle owing to an accident *On shore*—even when not commanding a ship *Afloat*—actually commanding a ship. *In the midst of his great misfortunes*—while lying aground

[Page 113] *Entered your head*—suggested itself to you. *My heart is warm to*—I love *Feelingly alive to*—fully conscious of. *Interests*—welfare.

## Para. 44.

*Davison*—the first lieutenant of the ‘Culloden.’ *Act of liberality*—free distribution of medals *On another account*—for a different reason ; not because of the cost. *Honorary badge*—title or reward.

## CHAPTER VI

## FIGHTING THE FRENCH IN ITALY,

## Para. 1.

[Page 114 ] *Nelson's health had suffered greatly.* . . *Agamemnon*—We remember he was appointed to the *Agamemnon* on the outbreak of the war of the French Revolution, during which he had to occupy Corsica where he took Bastia and Calvi; took part in the battles of the 13th and 14th of July in the same year ; and 13th March 1795, and of co-operated with General de Vins in driving the French out of the Riviera de Genoa. *Girth*—a strap encircling the body ; especially one by which saddle is fastened upon the back of a horse. *Buckled*—fastened *Taut*—Nautical word for ‘tight’ ; an adverb He means that his chief ailment is a kind of oppressive sensation in the chest, which he tries to cure by applying medicine during the night. *It should be absolutely necessary*—for example by a continuation of the war with France *In his own strong language*—as he forcibly put it *Repose for body or mind*—rest or freedom from anxiety. *Intermission of labour*—period during which he could not work. *Purchased*—gained at the sacrifice of health. *The loss of a limb*—the loss of his right arm which had to be amputated. *Season*—period. *Shattered frame*—weak health ; enfeebled constitution *Commensurate*—proportionate to the importance of the duties. His important duties entailed extra work and extra care,

## Para. 2.

*Pursuit of the enemy*—This refers to his search of the French fleet which had carried Bonaparte's troops for the

invasion of Egypt *Changed in its direction*—his anxiety was not gone : only he was anxious for a different object *Abated*—diminished. *Their defeat*—the defeat of the French fleet at the battle of the Nile *Constant wakefulness of thought*—ceaseless anxiety *The effect of his wound*—the weakness brought on by his wound. *Ardent*—sincere in his devotion to duty Being so devoted to duty he could not shirk work *Wide-reaching mind*—foresight Being a man gifted with extraordinary foresight he had to perform an extraordinary amount of work *Spare himself*—perform his duty half-heartedly *Nearly proved fatal*—ruined his health. *Took a favourable turn*—when recovery set in , when signs of the disappearance of the disease began to appear *Appear on deck*—i. e , perform his duties *End*—death

[Page 115 ] *On the passage*—on his way back to Italy. *It may please God*—i. e , possibly *This will be the finish to that fever of anxiety*—death will relieve me of the constant care which, etc *Be that as it pleases His goodness*—let God do to me whatever He wills

### Para. 3.

*Kindest attentions*—most affectionate treatment. *The warmest friendship*—that with Sir William and Lady Hamilton *Was awaiting him at Naples*—i. e , he was destined to receive when he reached Naples. Sir William was the British envoy at the court of Naples *The service*—i. e , your duties *Emma*—That was the Christian name of Lady Hamilton. *Looking out for the softest pillows*—anxious to give you great comfort *Repose*—give rest to *The few wearied limbs you have left*—i. e , to you who have had to undergo great bodily strain, and have lost your right eye and your right arm in battle. *Happy would it have been for Nelson*—it would have saved Nelson's character from the foul reproach of having become the slave of a beautiful and voluptuous woman, Lady Hamilton *If warm and careful friendship* .....there—if he had not been guilty of unpardonable conduct towards Lady Hamilton. *The character*—i. e , the dissipation and

splendour. *In its true light*—as it actually was. *On the way*—proceeding to Naples. *Detested the voyage to Naples*—strongly disliked to go to Naples. Because, as he had previously seen, the court of Naples was a profligate and imbecile one. *Never was any hero.* .. joy—A strong way of saying. —‘a strong outburst of public joy welcomed Nelson when he reached Naples’ *The court of Naples* .. existence—Naples was in imminent danger of being conquered by the French. *The Directory*—the French Government. *Held towards it*—used in its despatch to the King of Naples. *The language of a highwayman*—the words with which a robber addresses a traveller whom he is going to plunder. hence, ‘a rough and peremptory demand for immediate surrender on the threat of instant war.’ *Benevento*—a city of Italy, 32 miles north-east of Naples. *Revolutionize*—work a complete change in the Governments of the Italian states; i. e., conquer Italy for themselves. )

#### Para 4.

*The joy, therefore, of the Court* . . . *relieved them*—as the king of Naples was very anxious for the safety of his kingdom the defeat of the French, which saved it from being conquered by the French, gave him great joy. *Maria Theresa*—(born 1717, died 1780) was the empress of Austria and queen of Hungary. *Marie Antoinette*—queen of Louis XVI of France, beheaded on October 16th, 1793. *Had she been the wisest and gentlest of her sex.* .. horror—it was natural that she should hate and fear the French. Her hatred of the French was not an indication of a bad character, but a result of the situation in which she was. *Progress of revolutionary opinions*—i. e., the atrocities of the French Revolution.

[Page 116] *Her sister's fate*—her sister, Queen Antoinette had been guillotined by the French. *No unreasonable apprehensions for her own*—the natural fear that she too might be beheaded. *Little accustomed to restraint*—she was in the habit of being obeyed. *Her feelings were excited to the highest pitch*—she was in the utmost anxiety. *The victory*—

Nelson's victory over the French fleet at the battle of the Nile *Constant friend and favourite*—confidante *Who was present*—who was with the Queen of Naples when she received the news of the victory *Transports*—feelings of excessive joy. *Frantically*—like one mad *Burst into tears*.—These were tears of joy *Deliverer*—Nelson, because by his defeat of the French he had frustrated their plan of conquering Naples *What do we not owe you—i e*, we are indebted to you for our life and liberty *Saviour*—sc. from the hands of the French *O that*—I wish that. *Swollen*—filled with feelings of gratitude

#### Para. 5.

*Such—i e.* of gratitude and joy *Poor wretched*—because his ship had been damaged *Streamers*—flags Many of the people carried flags in their hands to bid him welcome *Led the way*—were the first to go out to meet him *State barge*—a large open boat for use on occasions of ceremony *They had seen Nelson for a few days, &c.*—namely, when Nelson was sent there with despatches to Sir William Hamilton, by Lord Hood in 1793. See p 39 *Then—i e*, even in that brief acquaintance. *Heroic spirit*—naval genius See p 39 again *So greatly influenced his future life*—enslaved him *Whose personal accomplishments* .. *equalled*—who was a woman of extraordinary powers “Her singing, her dancing, her attitudes after the antique her readiness in conversation and in repartee, made her welcome everywhere She was lively, clever, unaffected, good humoured, and withal exceedingly beautiful” (Laughton) *Powers of mind*—shrewdness and intelligence. *Person—beauty* *By her influence the British fleet.....Syracuse*—See p. 95. *Always asserted*—fully believed

#### Para. 6.

*Interval which passed.....received*—the period of time between Nelson's sailing for Egypt in pursuit of the French fleet, and the receipt of the news of his victory at the battle of the Nile,

[Page 117.] *The tidings*—the news of his victory. *Open-mouthed*—overcome with joy at the glad news he carried. *Its effect was*. ....*shot*—i. e., she was so overcome with joy that she immediately fainted away. *Literally been made ill by*—suffered much distress from. *Their hopes*—their hopes of Nelson's saving the kingdom of Naples by defeating the French fleet. *Fears*—their fears for Nelson when they received no news of him for a long time. *Joy*—their joy at hearing that Nelson had defeated the French fleet and thereby obviated the French conquest of Naples. *Catastrophe*—a sudden final event. This refers to Nelson's victory at the battle of the Nile. *So far exceeding*.....*hoped for*—so agreeably surprising. *Proportionate*—Their gratitude and affection was as great as their admiration. *More like one dead than alive*—overcome with joy. *Terribly affecting*—very tender and affectionate. "As the ship anchored, she accompanied by her husband, was the first to go on board, and exclaiming, 'O God, is it possible I' fell fainting on Nelson's arm. A burst of tears relieved her..." (Laughton) *Appellation*—name; title. Namely, "preserver and deliverer." *Lazzaroni*—Neapolitan beggars called after Lazarus, a poor beggar full of sores who was rescued from his grave by a miracle wrought by Christ. Lazarus was regarded as the patron saint of the poor and the sick.

#### Para. 7.

*His birthday*—September 29th. *Fete*—a French word meaning 'festivity.'

#### Para. 8.

*Shook*—greatly weakened. *Her most successful general*—Bonaparte. *Blocked up in Egypt*—confined in Egypt. Now that their ships had been destroyed it seemed impossible that they should be able to leave Egypt. *Hopeless, as it appeared, of return*—apparently hopeless of return, apparently because Napoleon escaped the eyes of the English cruisers and got back to France in October 1799. His army was left behind and surrendered to the English in 1801.

*Men without talents*—worthless men. Refers to the Directory *Without character*—i.e., of bad character *Whom Bonaparte had terrified into a peace*. .. *His destruction*—After her defeat by Bonaparte in Italy (chiefly at Montenotte) Austria was compelled to make peace with France. The result was the Treaty of Campo Formio signed on October 17th 1797. By it Austria ceded the Low Countries and the territory of the empire as far as the Rhine, she recognized the Cisalpine republic, and received in return Venice, a portion of the Venetian States, Istria, and Dalmatia. If instead of making peace, Austria had persevered in the war against France, it would probably have brought on the ruin of France. *The crisis*—the favourable turn affairs had taken after the battle of the Nile. *Enter the field*—join the allies in making war upon France. *Unbroken forces*—the whole of her huge army. *A general whose extraordinary military genius &c*—Suwarrow, the celebrated Russian General (1730-1800), of whom it was said that he never lost a battle.)

[Page 118] *A high and honourable rank in history*—great fame. *Sullied*—tainted; rendered disreputable. *Ferocity*—cruelty. After the capture of Ismail he mercilessly slaughtered its defenders and inhabitants, including even women and children, till more than thirty thousand perished, and the streets and passages were choked with heaps of the dead and the dying. *At hand*—imminent. *Meeting the danger*—opposing the French. *Vacillation*—hesitation. *This new coalition*—Pitt's second coalition, signed on June 22nd, 1799, between England, Russia, Germany, Naples, Portugal and Turkey.

### Para. 9.

*Had his choice*—was at liberty. *Advance*—prepare for war. *Just cause*—Nelson tried to persuade the King of Naples that his cause was just, because it is the duty of every king to save his subjects from the hands of a tyrant. *Sword in hand*—in the act of fighting. *Remain quiet*—wait calmly; do nothing to crush the French power. *Kicked out*—driven out by force and with disgrace. *Go on*—"advance." *Else*—

*i. e.*, if the King of Naples did not promise to join the coalition against France *Shipping*—collection of ships. *Be useful to the movements of the army*—be able to help the Neapolitan forces with transports *Continuance*—that he should continue to stay at Naples. *Mishap*—*i. e.*, French conquest.

#### Para. 10.

*The recovery of Malta*—Malta is an island of the Mediterranean, about 55 miles south of Sicily. In 1798 it had surrendered to Bonaparte and received a French garrison. *The villainous knights of their order*—the knights of Malta. They were originally called the Hospitallers of St John of Jerusalem from the fact that sometime after the First Crusade (1042), some Neapolitan merchants built at Jerusalem a hospital for sick pilgrims, and a church which they dedicated to St John; these they committed to the charge of certain knights, called Hospitallers of St. John. In 1310 these knights took Rhodes and changed their title into "Knights of Rhodes" In 1523 they were expelled from Rhodes by the Turks, and took up their residence in the Isle of Malta. They are called *villainous* because they surrendered their island to Bonaparte without offering any resistance

[Page 119] *His Sicilian Majesty*—Ferdinand IV, son of Charles III of Spain, great grandson of Louis XIV, King of Naples and Sicily from 1759—1806, when Bonaparte drove him from Naples and gave the throne to his brother Joseph. After Waterloo, Ferdinand recovered Naples, united the two kingdoms, and assumed the title of Ferdinand I, King of the two Sicilies Died 1825 *Arduous*—difficult.

#### Para. 11.

*General Mack*—an Austrian general (1752-1828), who in 1798 was sent to command the Neapolitan army against the French Being defeated by Macdonald and taken prisoner, he was sent to Paris, whence he made his escape and returned to Austria In 1805 he assumed command in Bavaria, but was compelled to surrender with his army of 30,000 men,



to Napoleon. For this he was condemned to death ; but the sentence was commuted to imprisonment *All that is doubtful .....traitor*—There is no doubt that he was a very bad general, but whether from cowardice or treachery is not clear *Assiduously extolled*—warmly praised. *To whom Europe might look for deliverance*—who had the genius to free all the European countries from the ambition of Napoleon. *What—i. e., a protector* *There could not be finer men*—the army was indeed a very fine one *Review*—an inspection of troops under arms by a general or commander for the purpose of ascertaining the state of their discipline, equipments, &c *Unhappy blunder*—very bad mistake *The fellow*—General Mack ; spoken contemptuously *Not less characteristic*—equally tending to illustrate General Mack's character. *His judgment*—his belief in the incompetency of General Mack *Cannot move without five carriages*—is a man fond of luxury. *I have formed my opinion*—I have now come to believe firmly that General Mack, instead of saving Naples, will cause her destruction. *I may be mistaken—i. e., that* General Mack may succeed in saving Naples and falsify my fears for him.

### Para, 12.

*While*—at the same time that *Portuguese squadron*—We remember that Portugal too had joined in the second coalition against Napoleon. *Whose neutrality ....French*—whose territory had been invaded by the French in spite of his having been no enemy of the French. See p. 68, ll 10-11, *The measure*—namely, the British occupation of Leghorn.

[Page 120] *Ambassador—i. e., the Neapolitan envoy*, *What*—an exclamation of amazement, *Received the republican flag taken at Goza—i. e., acquiesced in the conquest of Gozo for him*, *Is not his own flag ....Malta—i. e., he has publicly acknowledged Gozo and Malta as parts of his territory*, *Is not his flag shot at, &c—i. e., the French treat him as their enemy every day*. *And their shot returned... ..flag*—the Neapolitans themselves are fighting against the French in other places *Corvette*—a vessel of war ranking next

below a frigate and carrying not more than twenty guns. *Guns, mortars, &c.*—artillery. 'Mortars' are short thick cannon for throwing shots and shells into fortifications. The idea of all these questions is that though there is no formal declaration of war between Naples and France, yet there is undisputed indication of hostility between the two states. *Tantamount to*—equivalent to; as clear an indication of hostility. *Written paper*—document containing a formal declaration of war. *I give up all knowledge of what is war*—I confess that I do not know anything of the principles of warfare. He means that from his experience he can say that no formal declaration of war is necessary, before the Neapolitans can seize the French ships at Leghorn, because there already subsists open hostility between the two states.

### Para. 13.

*This reasoning was of less avail ....fears*—Nelson altogether failed to persuade Naselli to attack the French ships on the ground that he had every right to do so since there already existed open hostility between Naples and France; but when he told him that if he did not do so the French would destroy the harbour, he was to some extent influenced. *Argument addressed*—an appeal to *To remain neutral*—to lie unmolested. *Being active*—commencing offensive operations. *Sure*—which was sure to result in their victory. *Half-measure*—a mean course, between open war and perfect peace. *Laying an embargo on the vessels*—prohibiting them from leaving the port. 'Embargo' means 'arrest.' *The greatest mischief*—ruin. *The Ligurian Republic*—the republic of Genoa, so called because the people who inhabited the country round Genoa were anciently called the Ligurians. *Expedited*—hastened. These ships would have brought more soldiers from France.

### Para. 14

*Saw the consequence of permitting.....as myself*—agreed with me in thinking that if he allowed these French ships to go to France, they would bring back more troops from

France for the conquest of Italy *Prudently, and certainly safely*—For a general to be guided by orders from his government is a wise policy. Probably it is not always wise. But it is undoubtedly a policy for which no blame can lie on the general who, whatever the result of his actions may be, is always safe from the punishment that would otherwise, in the case of a mishap, inevitably follow.

[Page 121] *I act from the circumstances of the moment—i.e., I am guided not so much by the orders of Government as by my own convictions of what is right under particular circumstances.* Nelson means that if he sees necessity he freely acts in disobedience of orders. We know it, was in disobedience of orders that he brought on and won, the battle off Cape St Vincent.

#### Para. 15.

*It was vain to hope for anything vigorous. with—i.e., Nelson's present allies were hopelessly weak and irresolute. Depart—leave the port of Leghorn. No means were taken to enforce it—the ships were not driven out by force. The true Neapolitan shuffle—the indecision and hesitation which was a distinguishing feature of the Neapolitan character. Took place on all such occasions—i.e. whenever the Neapolitan general was asked to undertake active measures against the French, he always hesitated. The privateers at last to be disarmed—that the Neapolitan general had, after ten days of hesitation, at last decided to disarm the French privateers anchoring in the harbour of Leghorn. To 'disarm' a ship is to capture its guns. The corn landed—the corn which some of the French ships were carrying for Genoa, and France was to be captured and taken to Leghorn. Sent away—forced to leave the ship. Characteristic language—Nelson's reply tends to illustrate his character. I shall get no money—no share of the booty will be given to the English. Money is our god—in all transactions the chief object of the English is to get money. They will be undeceived as far as relates to us—the other nations will now discover that it is not the object of the English to gain money in everything.*

## Para. 16.

*Ode*—a dignified poem celebrating some important event. *Sonnet*—a poem of fourteen lines containing one thought, the rhymes being adjusted by a particular rule *Poured in*—*Cf.* the word “showered” similarly used above *Franciscan*—a monk belonging to the religious order of St. Francis of Assisi *Panegyric*—high praise. *Ventured upon a flight of prophecy*—was bold enough to go the length of making a prophecy *Father M<sup>c</sup> Cormick*—the Irish Franciscan who made that prophecy *Ships could not ascend the Tiber*—that therefore the fulfilment of the prophecy was a physical impossibility. Rome is not situated on the sea-coast, but fifteen miles away from it, and so it was impossible to take Rome with ships *Met the objection with a bold front*—boldly answered the objection.

## Para. 17.

*Rejoicings of this kind. ....duration*—the festivities held in honour of Nelson were soon over. *The castle of St. Angelo*—a fort in Rome, originally the tomb of Hadrian, fortified by Belisarius against the Goths. *The Roman states*—the Pope’s dominions *Castellana*—a town of central Italy, 26 miles south-east of Bari. *The event was doubtful*—General Mack would probably not be able to defeat the French.

[Page 122.] *Hung upon the issue*—depended upon the result of this enterprise *This country is lost*—Italy will be conquered by the French. *The Emperor*—sc. of Austria.

## Para. 18.

*Were soon verified*—soon proved to be true; what he feared soon came to pass. *Did not lose much honour... ..be lost*—they have no sense of honour, and therefore it is no disgrace to them to be defeated by the French. *They lost all they had*—they have lost the little honour they had. *General St Philip*—one of the “Neapolitan officers” above referred to. *Fell in with*—happened to meet. *Deserted to them*—treacherously joined the French. *Had virtue enough*

—was sufficiently patriotic . To kill a traitor to his country is an act of virtue, says Southey *Level a musket at him*—attempt to shoot him *Military chest*—the box containing cash *The runaways*—the Neapolitan troops who were fleeing from the French *Did not behave better*—also took to shameful flight *Prospect*—hope. *Advice*—information *Must look to their own personal safety*.—must escape to save their lives.

### Para. 19.

*Nelson landed*—sc in Naples. *Tremendous*—very stormy. *Received*—*i e*, given shelter *Asylum*—shelter. All this was in preparation of the French occupation of Naples which was expected every moment

[Page 123 ] *Trying season*—period of misfortune *Waited upon*—served *Except one man*—Sir William Hamilton.

### Para. 20.

*Palermo*—a town in the North coast of Sicily. From 1806 to 1815 it was the seat of the court of Naples

### Para. 21.

*Exactions*—heavy demands *Commissary*—political agent. *Maritime supremacy*—naval power *Secure asylum*—a safe retreat There was no fear from the French, in that part of the island *Upon the faith and word of a king*—upon his honour He appealed to his dignity to prove that he was telling the truth *Infringed*—violated He had always fulfilled the terms of all the treaties he concluded with France ; therefore, he argued, the French were not justified in making war upon him.

### Para. 22.

*Bolder policy*—*i e*, even if Tuscany had not been weak and timid in its dealings with France. *Might perhaps* . *Alert*—*i e*, that Tuscany should fall into the hands of the French was probably not wholly inevitable *Weak*—Tuscany's policy to take no part in the effort of the allies to drive the French

out of Italy was a result of her weakness *For Sicily*—that Sicily too might fall into the hands of the French *Commodore Duckworth*—an English admiral (1748-1817) who took part in several engagements with the French. In 1800 he was appointed to the command of the Leeward Islands, and in 1801 was created a K. C. B. In 1803 he became Commander-in-Chief of Jamaica and in 1805 defeated the French in the bay of St Domingo *Messina*—a town and province of Sicily. It was a very important position as it commanded the narrow straits between Italy and Sicily. *Were not lost upon*—i.e., were listened to by. *Minorca*—the second largest of the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean, then belonging to England. *Assisted*—co-operated with Nelson. *The spirit of the peasantry properly directed*—the peasants did not break out in revolt. *Resources*—help

### Para. 23.

[Page 124] *Corfu*—an island situated at the entrance of the gulf of Venice. It was in the hands of the French since Bonaparte dissolved the Venetian Republic in 1797 *In strange confederacy*—in alliance with each other which was rather surprising, because Russia and Turkey had so often been at war with each other. *A power which' was certainly, &c.*—namely, France which threatened both Russia and Turkey. *Sir Sydney Smith*—an English admiral (1764-1840) who was sent to act against the French in Egypt, and, by his bravery, and skill, compelled Bonaparte to abandon the siege of St Jean d' Acre, in 1799. In 1805 he was created a rear-admiral, and was afterwards appointed to defend Sicily from the invasion of the French who were the masters of Naples. *Addition of 'strenoth*—reinforcement *In himself, what Nelson valued more*—Nelson attached greater importance to the personal character of the officers than to the numerical strength of the forces they commanded *Cardinal Ruffo*—a Neapolitan cardinal who gathered together a miscellaneous army of peasants, priests, slaves, beggars, &c, to fight the French. *Questionable*—i.e., not very good. *Of a temper fitted for such times*—i.e., patriotic. A patriotic tem-

per is most serviceable in times of war. *Calabria*—the most southerly province of Italy. *Raised*—gathered together. *A Christian army*—He called his army the “Christian army” probably in allusion to his own church dignity of a Cardinal, or perhaps to suggest that these soldiers considered it a religious duty to fight the French. *The basest and vilest materials*—low class of men. *Loyal peasants*—peasants who were willing to fight for their king, the king of Naples. *Friar*—an order of begging monks. *Galley slaves*—men condemned to row in the galleys for crimes they had committed. *The emptying of the jails*—released prisoners. *Banditti*—robbers. *Delivered up*—surrendered to the English fleet under Trowbridge. *Were in a state of famine*—received no supplies of corn. *From the effect of this baleful revolution*—on account of the French Revolutionary War. *Pressed*—urged. *Telling him that £10,000 given away.... kingdom*—This is equivalent to saying—Nelson explained to the Sicilian Government that it was of the utmost importance that they should supply him with provisions, for on this depended the safety of their kingdom. He further meant to say that the outbreak of the war had made supplies very scarce. *The wisdom and integrity*—wise and honest statesmen. *Supplied its want*—procured some money.

*There is nothing which I propose* complied with—whatever I ask people to do for me, they always do. *The execution*—the accomplishment of my object. His object was to save Sicily and protect the king and queen of Naples. *Dreadful*—attended with very great dangers. *Makes me mad*—I am driven to desperation when I think of the difficulties. *Worn out*—exhausted. *Hold—e, live.*

#### Para. 24.

*Brest*—a seaport city of France, 320 miles south-west of Paris. This fleet had been blockaded at Brest by 16 English ships under Lord Bridport. *Under cover of*—hidden by. *Lord Keith*—second in command to Earl St Vincent in the Mediterranean.

[Page 125]. *Liberate*—set them free from the blockade under which they were at Cadiz. *Act against*—attack. *Overpower*—defeat. *In detail*—by piecemeal. *Oran*—a town and seaport of Algeria, north Africa. *Junction*—the junction of the Spanish fleet under Masmedo with the French fleet from Brest.

### Para. 25.

*More than risk—lose* *More depends upon opinion than upon acts themselves*—Nelson means that though he would guard Sicily as much by going away to meet the French and Spanish fleets as by staying there, yet, owing to the king of Naples's belief that Nelson's presence in Sicily ensured his safety, his going away would make the king of Naples and his supporters feel helpless, and would encourage the French to attack them immediately. *My heart is breaking*—I feel hopeless. *Smaller vessels*—Trowbridge took the larger vessels himself to join Nelson. *We are destroyed*—the English fleet is defeated by the French.

[Page 126]. *They will have their wings so completely clipped*—the French fleet will be so thoroughly deprived of their power of sailing.

### Para. 26.

*Just at this time*—when he was in a very despondent mood in the fear of losing Sicily. *Captain Mallowell*—a British captain who had served under Nelson at the siege of Calvi, and commanded the *Swiftsure* at the battle of the Nile. *Hot work of it*—hard fighting to do in the coming battle. *You see*—sc. from the fact of his having accepted the present of a coffin. *The bulkhead*—the wooden partition separating his cabin from the next cabin. *He was disappointed in the son-in-law*—Captain Nisbet had lately been reprimanded for his conduct by Earl St. Vincent; and Nelson was very sorry for it.

### Para. 27.

*Weary of the world*—disgusted with everything. *In my present state*—in this mood. *I could quit it with a smile*—I



would gladly welcome death *Insensible to*—do not value. *Those of the estate six feet by two*—the dead ‘The estate 6 feet by 2’ is the grave, as graves are dug about six feet long and two feet broad. He says he does not envy the wealthy, and the glorious any more, he longs to die, as death will give him release from all his troubles.

### Para. 28.

*Keeping*—staying *Maretimo*—an island on the west coast of Sicily *Upwards*—farther into the Mediterranean. *Four different nations*—England, Russia, Turkey, and Portugal *Armed rabble*—undisciplined, ill-equipped army *Royalists*—people who were opposed to the republican form of government

[Page 127] *Act upon the offensive*—attack the allies *Fort St. Elmo, Uovo, Nuovo*—names of three famous forts of Naples. St Elmo, is situated on the hill of Martino and is a fortress of immense strength. Nuovo is near the harbour with a fine triumphal arch erected in honour of Afonso of Argao. Uovo is on a bold promontory, or rather island, connected by a bridge with the mainland. *Neapolitan revolutionists*—those of the Neapolitans who favoured a republican form of government, and sympathised with the principles of the French Revolution. In their hands, therefore, the castles were not very safe, for they might at any moment fraternise with the French. Moreover they were people who did not want to have the king of Naples brought back to rule. Hence if the allies could take possession of these two castles, they could capture also the third one which was garrisoned by the French, and become masters of Naples.

### Para. 29.

*Capitulate*—surrender *Option*—choice *Prince royal*—heir to the crown *A flag of truce was flying*—The flag of truce showed that they had no intention to resist, for, we remember, they had capitulated to Ruffo on condition of receiving a guarantee of safety. *Annul*—declare it void. *Rebels*—the Neapolitan revolutionists. They were rebels because they

did not want to have their king brought back, but wanted to set up a republican rule. *Unconditional*—absolute.

### Para. 30.

*This*—namely, to annul the treaty he had concluded. *Who took an active part in the conference*—acted as interpreters. *Of this nature*—a treaty of capitulation made in the absence of the commander who was politically empowered to conclude treaties. *Honourably*—without committing a breach of faith. *Set aside*—“annulled” *Retired*—left Nelson’s presence. *Silenced by Nelson’s authority*—he did not raise further objections in Nelson’s presence because Nelson was his superior officer. *Not convinced*—still believing that he could not honourably set aside the treaty.

[Page 128] *Under pretence of carrying the treaty into effect*—as if they were to be granted pardon according to the terms of the treaty just concluded by Cardinal Ruffo *To the vengeance of*—to be punished by *A deplorable transaction*,—a stain upon the memory of Nelson and the honour of England—This is an unjust reflection on Nelson’s conduct, which has also been unjustly represented. Nelson did not use the capitulation to induce the garrisons to leave the castles, and then refused to grant them life and liberty as was promised by the treaty. Nelson had given them twenty-four hours’ previous notice informing them that they “must surrender themselves to His Majesty’s royal mercy.” *To palliate it would be in vain*—it is impossible to extenuate the guilt of this conduct; Nelson’s conduct was wholly unjustifiable. *To justify it would be wicked*—if one were to assert that Nelson’s conduct was right, he would be guilty of wickedness. *There is no alternative for...., shame*—an impartial historian cannot but tell the unpleasant truth, otherwise he too would share the guilt of Nelson’s conduct.

### Para. 31.

*Gaieta and Capua*—two other fortresses of Naples, which were then occupied by French troops. *Relieved*—i. e., reinforced. *Suvorof*—another spelling of “Suwarrow,” the

Russian General. *But Nelson thought his presence necessary, &c*—but Nelson thought that there was danger on the sea side *He sent Admiral Duckworth with a small part only*—In other words he disobeyed the order in two points—(1) in not going himself, and (2) in sending only a small part of his fleet. *Dilemma*—a strange situation in which of two alternatives both are attended by difficulties. *This was a dilemma which he had foreseen*—in a letter to Lord Spencer he had speculated on the probability of his being called on to sail for the protection of Minorca. *Such an order*—an order directing him to proceed to Minorca. *At this moment*—when Nelson had driven out the French and their allies from half of Naples. *The Admiralty*—the first Lord of the Admiralty, Lord Spencer. *It would be a case for some consideration*—it would be very difficult to decide. *Is to be risked*—it is wiser to incur the danger of having Minorca invaded by the French; *i. e.*, whether it is wiser to continue at Naples. *Or the two kingdoms of Naples and Sicily*—or let Naples and Sicily be completely conquered by the French, *i. e.*, whether it is wiser to leave Naples and go to Minorca. *To risk the former*—to continue at Naples. *With whose high notions ...acquainted*,—whom he well knew to be a man who was very careful never to disobey orders. *My orders*—the orders I receive. *Risked my life for the good cause*—put myself in danger of being killed in serving my country. *I with cheerfulness did my commission*—in the present case, therefore, I freely disobeyed orders and put myself in danger of losing my appointment. The danger of losing my appointment is not so great as the danger of losing my life, and so I disobeyed orders freely. *Military tribunal*—court martial. *I think me criminal*—pronounce me guilty. *The world*—the public. *Regard not my own safety*—am not guided by selfish considerations. *At stake*—in danger.

### Para. 32.

*No attempt*—The French did not invade Minorca. *Effectuated rather than accelerated*—accomplished from the beginning to the end, not enabled to have it done only more quickly. Southey means to say that the Portuguese and the English

fleet alone had the credit of driving the French out of Naples ; the other troops of other nations took very little active part in the undertaking.

### Para. 33.

[Page 129] *Expedient*—prudent They did not wish to do it, for Nelson's disobedience of orders led to no evil results, on the contrary it resulted in success ; but yet they had to do it, to set an example to others *Censure*—reprimand. *Hazarding*—exposing it to the risk of being conquered by the French *As it appeared to them*—The Admiralty did not know that Nelson had very good grounds to continue in Naples ; they thought he had disobeyed orders wantonly. *In like manner*—i. e., to co-operate with land forces at some place in the interior of a country *Event*—result *Though indeed the event.....proceeded*—though, even if the result had been known, he would still have been reprimanded, for he was reprimanded not because his conduct brought on any disaster but because disobedience of orders is detrimental to military and naval discipline. *It would not be the less acceptable*—it would still have been welcomed as joyfully as it had been. *His judgment in thus employing.... result*—that he was right in getting a number of his sailors to co-operate with the land forces is shown by the fact that he was successful in the capture of Capua. *By the gratification of a professional and becoming pride*—by the fact that his victory made him in his capacity of a naval officer proud of his country's naval strength. *Becoming*—legitimate ;—something which nobody can find fault with. To be proud of one's country is a " becoming " pride *From having only a left hand*—from the fact of my being physically incapable of writing a long letter. *The motives that actuated my conduct*—my grounds for disobeying orders. *I am fitter to do the action than describe it*—In other words, " I am more of a soldier than a scholar ".

### Para. 34.

*Munificence*—liberality. *Domain of Bronte*—a market-town in Sicily, at the foot of Mount Etna, bestowed, with its

territory and an income of £3,750, by the Neapolitan government, on Lord Nelson, in 1799, under the title of a duchy, in reward of his naval exploits *Worth*—fetching a revenue of *Finally prevailed*—at last induced Nelson to accept the present. *He considered his own honor too much. . theirs*—The argument, when put in the direct form, would be .—“if you do not accept the reward we (the king and queen of Naples) would suppose that you pay more regard to your own honor than to ours, for we feel we are in honor bound to make you this present” *Words*—words that show that he was deeply grateful for Nelson’s valuable services. *The sense of rank*—the belief that they are kings *Confer a virtue upon*—influence them to do a good deed *Those who seem to be most unworthy . . born*—kings who otherwise are worthless The idea of this sentence is that even bad kings are sometimes led to do a good deed by their pride of position. Pride of position in kings does not generally lead them to do good But in the case of Ferdinand it did,—it influenced him to show his gratitude to Nelson by giving him a rich reward The words that he spoke to Nelson on this occasion (given in the next sentence) show that Ferdinand was mindful of his kingly name which, he feared, would be held in disgrace if he failed to acknowledge his gratitude to Nelson by handsomely rewarding him *Posterity*—future generations. *Ferdinand Bourbon*—By adding his full name, he means to suggest that he is a descendant of an illustrious royal family.

### Para. 35.

*Elevate me*—add to my glory *At Constantinople*—in a heathen and a foreign country Nelson was well known at Constantinople because his victory at the battle of the Nile had frustrated Napoleon’s plan of invading Egypt and the rest of the Turkish Empire *The grand seignor*—the Sultan. *Familiar in their mouths*—well known ; a household word. *In this country—i e , in Sicily I am every thing which a grateful monarch , . me*—I am called by the most honourable names which the king and his subjects can think of to express their gratitude,

## Para 36.

*The outward and visible signs of honour*—the titles and rewards which had been conferred upon him *His Sicilian title*—Duke of Bronte *Duke of Thunder*—This is the English translation of “Duke of Bronte,” *bronte* is Greek for thunder. *Dahomy*—a savage kingdom on the west coast of Africa. *A strong name*—Nelson was pleased with his Sicilian title which would tend to make his a dreaded name among the savage nations of Africa *To a sailor’s taste*—a name naturally to be loved by a sailor that Nelson was A sailor would interpret the “thunder” to mean the guns of a ship ; he would therefore naturally like to be called a thunderer. *Certainly to no man...applicable*—it was a title very suitable to Nelson, who was very strong at sea *Offering*—present *Zante*—an island in the Adriatic, formerly a dependency of the republic of Venice, but then in possession of the French. *Affected him. ...feeling*—touched him more than did the many costly presents he had received. *That little community*—Zante. *Truncheon*—spear. *Accelerate*—hasten.

*In which amidst the glory and peace of thrones.....cease*—when war will die out altogether and the world will be at peace. Tennyson too dreamt of a similar Millenium when he said :—

“ Till the war-drum throb’d no longer, and the battle  
flags were furled

In the Parliament of man, the Federation of the world.

There the common sense of most shall hold a fretful realm  
in awe,

And the kindly earth shall slumber, lapt in universal law.”

—*Locksley Hall*

*Tribute*—token of gratitude. *To the heart*—deeply

## Para 37.

*The Roman states*—the Papal states, the region of Central Italy ruled by the Pope. Rome was the capital of the Papal States. *Specie*—precious metal coined ; as opposed to bullion which means uncoined precious metal. *Requisitions*—

demands *Sterling*—of the genuine currency. This word is derived from *Easterling*,—the early English name for the merchants from North Germany, noted for the purity of their money, and said to have perfected the British coin *Affected*—pretended *Blasphemous*—because it likened Napoleon to Christ *Detesting the impiety*—being offended at the sacrilege of Napoleon's being likened to Christ. *Groaning beneath*—rendered miserable by. *These perfidious robbers*—the French. *Pillage*—plunder.

### Para. 38.

*Tranquillity*—freedom from molestation by the French *Driving the French before him*—forcing the French to retreat with fear *Complete the deliverance of Italy*—make Italy totally free from the French *The field of glory is a large one*—one can gain distinction in many ways. *Was never more open* .. you—i e, you can very easily gain great distinction just now *The Pope*—Pius VI *His restoration*—his gaining back his estates *A heretic*—one who was not a Roman Catholic Sir James Erskine, being an Englishman, was a Protestant, and all Protestants were called heretics by the Pope *The difficulties*—Nelson looked only at the glory of the undertaking *Committed*—put in a position from which it was difficult to retreat *Civita Vecchia*—a fortified seaport, 36 miles north-west of Rome *Regular fortress*—sc. and therefore would require more than 1,200 men to conquer it

### Para. 39.

[Page 132] *What*—namely, the recovery of Rome *Attempt*—*Effected*—These two words well illustrate the difference between Sir James Erskine and Nelson.

### Para 40

*Completed his work*—successfully driven out the French. *Continent*—This word is properly used for a collection of several countries, and not for only one such as Italy. But it is sometimes loosely used for a large country Probably it has been used here to magnify the hugeness of Nelson's task *Turned the scale against him*—made him weaker instead of stronger than the besieged garrison. In other words, the

numerical strength of the French was such that the English were just sufficient to contend successfully That is, the reason why the service was very anxious and arduous *Love*—They therefore heartily assisted the English against the French *It has been no fault of the navy*—i. e., we are not to be blamed. *Attacked by land*—sc by some of the allies of the English He means to say that he had requested the allies to make a joint land attack with him on Malta, but they did not do so, and that therefore he is not responsible *The means*—soldiers to attack Malta by land *Influence*—any power of forcing them to obey me' *Those who have*—those of the allies who can spare soldiers for the reduction of Malta

#### Para 41.

*Same causes*—namely, (1) the belief that the undertaking was a very difficult one, and (2) the excuse that he had not received orders to that effect *Demurral*—hesitation. *Like Nelson*—as Nelson had. *That lively spring of hope which partakes . . . war*—the cheerfulness arising from confidence in one's own strength which produces certainty of success and brings about most wonderful victories in war *Respectable*—fairly strong. *One of the strongest places in Europe*—i. e., Malta.

#### Para. 42.

[Page 133] *Means miserably limited*—a very small force. *At a stand*—not progressing, dropped *Command*—procure *Of his own*—of his private fortune *Cobs*—Spanish dollars. Trowbridge had obtained these dollars from captured Spanish vessels in Cadiz bay *Every farthing and every atom of me*—all I have and all I am. *Cause*—undertaking, namely, the reduction of Malta *Box*—the gold box presented to him by the Czar Paul I See p. 109. *Pledged*—mortgaged *Paying the bills*—recovering the expenses of the expedition from Government.

#### Para. 43.

*In what scenes . . . part*—the heavy difficulties he would have to meet in Nelson's company. *Interest*—something



that was for their own advantage. *Duty*—something they were bound to do *Exertion*—actively, endeavouring to furnish supplies *A knavish crew*—a set of wicked men, *Blind to*—ignorant of *Resigning himself wholly to*—depending entirely on *Crooked*—treacherous *It*—the Sicilian Government *Infatuation*—love for Lady Hamilton *An Enterprise*—viz. the reduction of Malta *Dying off fast for want*—suffering great hardship for want of supplies.

[ Page 134 ] *Worth while*—of any use. *Making another application*—to beg for supplies again *If that be the case* . . . *me*—He means—if we cannot get supplies from Sicily, we shall not be able to conduct the operations *Distressing*—attended by great hardships *Puglia*—the modern name of what used to be called Apulia, a province on the east side of the kingdom of Naples *A short time will decide the business*—we shall have to abandon the enterprise soon. *The German interest prevails*—the Germans have a secret influence over Naples, so that much of the corn that should come to Malta is sent to the north of Italy for the use of the German army. *At your lordship's elbow*—near you, with you *All, all will be thrown on you*—you will have to bear the whole blame, if the expedition comes to nothing. *Parry the blow*—i. e., obviate the failure *I foresee much mischief brewing*—I believe that many difficulties are going to happen to us in the future *Many happy returns of the day to you*—may you spend this day (New Year's day) happily in many future years, may you enjoy a long and happy life. It is the custom to wish our friends a happy New Year or Christmas or birth-day out of politeness *Tender-hearted*—touched by sight of misery *Move*—touch with pity *Even a Neapolitan*—even such a cruel man as a Neapolitan He charges the Neapolitans with cruelty because they refused to send supplies to feed his starving army.

#### Para. 44.

*With this day my ability ceases*—I have no more money to do so any more *Bent on starving us*—determined not to send supplies to us, *Without our being witnesses of their*

*distress*—we cannot bear the sight of their suffering so much pain. *I curse the day I ever served, &c—i. e.*, I bitterly repent of having ever served the Neapolitan Government. *they did not deserve any service. We have characters to lose*—we are honourable men, and so the failure of this expedition will be a disgrace to us. *These people have none*—the Neapolitans have no sense of honour, and so they do not care if they are put to disgrace. *Do not suffer.....us*—let no blame fall upon us for something of which the Neapolitans should be held guilty. *Our country is just but severe*—the public of England carefully judge who are to blame, but when they find one guilty they punish him very severely. *Fever of my brain*—my anxiety. *Girgenti*—a province of Sicily on the south-west coast. *The money is ready—i. e.*, we are willing. *Something would be done*—you would immediately take steps to get supplies. *Engine—i. e.*, intrigue. He means that some other power is trying to persuade the king of Naples to fall off from the English alliance. *I hit on the proper person*—I know the man who is working against us. *Agreeably to*—in keeping with. He implies that the Neapolitans are in the habit of favouring unworthy men. *All I write to you—i. e.*, the state of my army. *At the queen's*—in Naples; at court. *Intriguing*—given to double dealing; professing alliance to two hostile powers at once. *Duplicity*—double dealing.

[Page 135] *Open*—straightforward. *Manner of acting*—conduct. *Made a handle of*—taken advantage of. He means that the Neapolitans will use the information they get from Nelson in ruining the cause of the English. *Infamous tricks*—shameful intrigues.

#### Para. 45

*Insensible to*—unaffected by. *Almost on his knees*—in the most entreating manner. *Protesting*—pleading. *Satisfied with their professions*—accepted their diplomatic language of friendship as true. *Broken his spirit*—made him gloomy and cheerless. *Foreboded*—anticipated. *Decision*—power of acting with determination. *Ventured upon*—was bold

enough to adopt *Even it had no other claims ... people—* though in other respects also he had done great good to the Maltese *Common humanity*—such help as every human being is expected to render to any one *Infatuated*—foolish *Sanguinary*—properly bloody, hence cruel. *Edicts*—orders. *To the great delight and advantage.....proprietors*—because they would get the price of the coin, which, had it been sent to the Germans, they would not have got *Raising—i. e.*, abandoning *Waited in calmness . . . himself*—was prepared to meet any ill consequences that may arise from his act *Mr Coleridge*—Samuel Taylor Coleridge, the poet and philosopher *The Governor of Malta*—namely, Captain Ball.

#### Para. 46.

[Page 136] *Its relief*—to reinforce the French garrison in Malta *La Valette*—the capital of Malta *Upon his own plan*—independently, without having been ordered to do so by Lord Keith *Left him*—quitted his presence *To sail*—and sailed *For which*—for having thus quitted the commander-in-chief without express orders *If I had not succeeded—* had it not been for this victory over the French fleet. *Broke—ruined*

#### Para 47

*This glorious finish*—this splendid victory which destroyed the few remaining ships *To have taken a sprig off. ... laurels*—to detract from the glory of the captains of the Frudroyan Lion, and Penelope Had Nelson been present, the credit of the victory would have been given to him. *Served in my school*—learnt their tactics from me. *Caught—* were inspired by *Fire—energy* *The Nile fleet*—the French fleet which Bonaparte had conducted to Egypt

#### Para 48.

*Foully*—by dishonest means.

[Page 137] *Capitulation*—letter of surrender The document by which the French surrendered Malta to the English. *Absolutely*—positively. *As far as they dared*—This is what

they politely added, because they could not demand Nelson's presence authoritatively, they being his subordinates. *Feeling of cordiality*—love. *His spirit could not submit patiently*—he was a man of an independent character, and so he could not always work under orders. *Broken-hearted*—disappointed.

### Para. 49

*Hamburg*—the chief commercial town of Germany on the right bank of the Elbe. *Report*—rumour. *Venal*—influenced by bribery *Cabinets*—ministry *They*—namely, the French. *Tumultuously*—in rebellion. *Would fain have*—were eager to. *Testimonials*—tokens *Prince of Esterhazy*—Nicholas D'Esterhazy, a descendant of the Forchtenstein branch of the famous Hungarian family of Esterhazy He resided for several years in England, France and Italy, made a magnificent collection of works of art, established a splendid picture-gallery at Vienna, and was the patron of musicians In 1809 Napoleon offered him the crown of Hungary, which he declined *Entertainell*—feasted *Grenadiers*—soldiers. *Magdeburg*—a city of Germany *The curious*—the people who desired to have a look at Nelson. *Rhenish wine*—one of the best wines is of the crop raised on the banks of the Rhine. *Vintage*—grape harvest *That which had now arrived .....expected*—he thought that Nelson's arrival was the fittest occasion to spend that wine on

[Page 138] *Honour of flowing into the heart.....hero*—He believed that the wine would be honoured by being drunk by such a great man as Nelson. *The donor*—the man who made the present, namely, the wine merchant *Lay by*—put aside for a future occasion *Pastor*—clergyman *The Christian world*—all the Christian countries *Deceived him*—led him to believe that the Christian world had been saved, but the fact was that they had not. *No Nelson upon shore*—no able Commander-in-Chief of the land forces as Nelson was of the fleet *Saved*—sc. from the hands of Napoleon *But in his foresight of the horrors . . .place*—the pastor dreaded that the worst horrors would befall his country and all other Christian countries if they fell into the hands of France;

they fell into the hands of France and the worst horrors did befall them.

## CHAPTER VII

### BATTLE OF THE BALTIC.

#### Para 1.

*Yarmouth*—a seaport of England, 18 miles east of Norwich. *Hoisted her colours*—This is how ships salute a great man. *Bonfire*—a great fire lighted on the top of a conspicuous place as a mark of rejoicing. *Concluded the day*—at night there were bonfires and illuminations. *Drew up*—formed themselves in regular order. *Ipswich*—a market town, parliamentary borough and capital of Suffolk, 68 miles north-east from London. *Drew him*—took out the horses and themselves pulled his carriage. This is a very common mode of honouring a great man. *Represent this place in parliament*—get himself elected as Member of Parliament for Ipswich. *Consulted*—asked their opinion as to whether they would like to have Nelson for their representative in Parliament. *Observing*—remarking. *Find out a preferable path into Parliament*—do become Member of Parliament by sheer force of merit, and not by flattering the leading men of any municipal town. *When the people of Ipswich would think it, &c*—when he would gain great glory in war, and the people who then refused to elect him would be only too eager to do so. *Populace*—common people. *Ludgate Hill*—the name of an old prison in London. *Guild hall*—a famous public building in London. *Common council*—the council of a city empowered to make bye-laws for the government of its citizens.

#### Para. 2.

*The Addington administration*—the ministry which succeeded that of Pitt in 1801, in which Addington was prime minister and chancellor of the exchequer. *The three northern courts*—the Governments of Russia, Sweden and Denmark. *Formed a confederacy for making England, &c.*—had formed a

league called the Armed Neutrality. *For making England resign her naval rights*—to coerce England into abandoning her right of searching vessels belonging to nations who were not at war with England or France

[Page 140] *Passions*—whims. *Fits*—occasional acts, *Subject to the wildest humours of caprice*—most whimsical and capricious like a mad man. *Crazed*—rendered thoughtless *Safely*—without danger to himself *Innocently*—without committing outrages on others *Weak humanity*—a human being who is apt to misuse his powers. *Denmark was French at heart*—Denmark secretly favoured the French cause though not openly in alliance with France *Injunctions*—mandates ; orders *Sweden under a king*—namely, Gustavas Adolphus, dethroned in 1809 *Whose principles were right*—who was a right-minded king *Southey compliments Gustavus Adolphus*, for, like himself, this king was inveterate in his hatred of Napoleon *A taint of hereditary insanity*—a touch of lunacy which he had inherited from his ancestors. *In acquiescence with*—according to *Two Powers*—namely, Russia and Denmark *Whom it feared to offend*—i.e., Sweden was coerced into joining the coalition

### Para. 3.

*Cronstadt*—a seaport and fortress of Russia, 20 miles west of St Petersburg *Revel*—a strongly-fortified seaport town of European Russia 240 miles South-west of St. Petersburg. *Petersburg*—St Petersburg the capital of Russia *Archangel*—another seaport of Russia, about 40 miles from the White Sea It was for a long time the only seaport of the empire *Ill manned*—not supplied with an efficient crew of sailors *Crush*—break up *Properly murmured*—had good reasons to be dissatisfied *Another*—Sir Hyde Parker. *Circumstanced as he was*—i.e., because he had repeatedly been put under the command of another officer, and never given the chief command *This expedition*—the Baltic expedition. *Carried away*—misled. *Impulse*—strong feeling.

## Para. 4.

[Page 141] *Nervous about*—afraid to experience. *Fields of ice*—icebergs *Brace up*—muster courage and energy. *These are not times for nervous systems*—these are stirring times in which the qualities needed are courage and resolution, and nervousness is ruinous *Hailstorm*—heavy shower. *Wooden walls*—ships *Of Campbell* —

“ Britain’s best bulwarks are her wooden walls.”

Britain’s fleet is called her *wooden wall*, because it defends the coast, just as a wall defends a town. *Have fair play*—get the opportunity to fight *Chivalrous*—noble.

## Para. 5

*Mr Vansittart*—the British envoy to Copenhagen in 1801. *Obtain its end*—break up the Armed Neutrality *Negotiation*—diplomacy They hoped to avoid war. *Than the government seems to have done*—because it did place Nelson in chief command of the Baltic expedition *Crisis*—dangerous situation of affairs *Her enemies might well have been astonished &c*—Southey means that Nelson was so much more famous, and so much more dreaded by England’s foes than Sir Hyde Parker ever was, that the fact that he and not Nelson was put in command of this expedition must have caused surprise even to the French *Deference*—respect, appreciation. *Intuitive genius*—natural abilities. *All-commanding*—very superior *Rendezvous*—place of meeting *The Cattegat*—a large inlet of the German Ocean, between the east coast of Jutland, the islands of Funen and Zealand, and the west coast of Sweden. *His own mind had been made up upon them*—he had already decided what course to pursue *Gathered*—inferred from bits of information received from various sources. *Honour may arise from them; good cannot*—they may gain glory by making a bold attack in spite of self-created difficulties, but they cannot expect to gain any victory, such as would be of great benefit to England

[Page 142] *Cronenburg castle*—This ought to be Cronborg, a fortress of Denmark, near Elsinore, which guards the

passage of the Sound *Instead of Copenhagen*—instead of anchoring outside Copenhagen, the capital of Denmark. *Give weight to our negotiation*—influence the Danes to accept the British terms more readily. Cionborg was a better place to anchor in, because it was the key to Denmark. So Nelson thought that by anchoring there he would be able to intimidate the Danes into submission. *Would think twice*—would deliberate long and seriously. *Put his name to war with England*—sign the declaration of war with England. *When the next moment.. .. ruins—i. e.*, when he knows well how easily the English can defeat the Danes. *The Dane would see our flag.....had—i. e.*, we would soon be able to conquer Denmark.

### Para. 6.

*Precious time*—a great deal of time which could have been more profitably employed. *Which was to be purchased*—in consequence of which (the loss of time). *By the dearest blood of Britain and Denmark*—there broke out a war between England and Denmark, in which large numbers of men were killed on both sides. *The Sound*—the strait leading from the Cattogat into the Baltic, between the Danish island of Zealand on the west, and the coast of Sweden on the east. *The roads*—the harbour. *Their means of defence. . resist*—they were, totally unprepared to meet the invaders and were afraid that they would be defeated. *Repel*—defeat. *Worthy of himself and of the occasion*—a letter that displays Nelson's warlike genius, and his masterly grasp of the present situation. *Profited by*—made good use of; employed it in fortifying her defences. *Leisure*—delay. *Impolitely*—foolishly. *Be stronger*—so by fortifying their defences more and more. *Good match with them*—able to fight with them so successfully. *Only consideration*—the one thing we are to decide. Nelson means that whether they should attack them or not remains no longer to be decided. *Here you are with almost the safety—certainly the honor—of England. ... British officer*—you are the Commander-in-Chief of the Baltic expedition, and your responsibility is greater than what was given to any British commander before; upon your conduct depends



nearly the safety of England, or if not quite the safety, undoubtedly the honour. If this expedition fails, England's position might be endangered and she would be put to great shame. *Decision—promptitude Rear her head higher than ever—gain more glory Again do I repeat—* This shows how earnest Nelson was in his conviction of the importance of the Baltic expedition.

[Page 143] *Never did our country depend so much.....this* the Baltic expedition is the most important of all that have yet been sent from England *How best to honour her.....* enemies—whether you can contribute to England's glory and humble her enemies by declaring immediate war with Denmark or by trusting to diplomacy.

### Para. 7.

*Supposing him to force the passage of the sound—in case* the British ships attempted to enter the Baltic through the sound *I'houah perhaps again—* though he thought that the damage would not be irreparable, but only slight *Crown Islands—* two island batteries about half a mile from the shore in front of the port of Copenhagen *( carries you in—* which is strong enough to enable the British ships to enter the Baltic *Taking the bull by the horns—* a proverbial expression meaning 'adopting the boldest and most straightforward course in difficulty or danger' *The Revel ships—* the Russian ships at Revel *The middle grounds—* the sand banks in front of Copenhagen. *Floating batteries—* men-of-war *The Belt—* the passage lying between the islands of Zealand and Funen *Draco—* Dragon Point on the south-east of the island of Amak.

### Para. 8

*Elsinore—* a seaport of Denmark, 24 miles from Copenhagen. This town is the scene of Shakespeare's "Hamlet" *Their fruitless mission—* they had gone to Copenhagen to negotiate peace on favourable terms, but failed.

[Page 144] *Only lose not an hour—* only let it be at once. Nelson advised expedition because he knew that further delay on their part would enable the Danes to fortify their places fur-

ther. *Reserve*--habit of secrecy *The captain of the fleet*--a captain who is temporarily given the position of a rear-admiral. His chief duties are to carry out the orders of the Commander-in-chief and to maintain the discipline of the fleet. He never communicated his plans to any of his subordinates. *Getting under way*--setting sail. *Apprised*--informed

### Para. 9

*Idly expended*--wasted *Gun*--gun fire. *Soldier-like*--i.e., bold and frank. *Becoming*--proper The reply was rather insulting, but the dispatch itself was a most foolish one, and should never have been sent

[Page 145] *Formality*--formal letter ; an abstract noun used as concrete. The dispatch was merely a formal letter, because, in point of fact, Denmark had already declared war against England. *The British minister had not been sent away*--there had been no formal declaration of war. It is usual for a country to send away the ambassador of another, when it wants to declare war against that other. *Passport*--a letter of safe conduct *At his own demand*--on his own application He himself wanted to leave Denmark : he was not told to do so *Could not meddle with politics*--had nothing to do with the political aspect of the question. It was not his duty to ascertain whether there had been a formal declaration of war between England and Denmark. *He was not a liberty*--i.e., he could not *A fleet*--a fleet belonging to another nation ; namely the English fleet. *Of which the intention was not yet known*--which might have come prepared for war. *Approach the guns of*--i.e., attempt to attack. *Make any proposals to the king*--This phrase illustrates the Danish governor's non-political temperament. From the pen of a politician the same thing would have been expressed in the language of politics into which the phrase would be translated thus '--conduct any negotiations with His Majesty.' *The commander*--the British admiral, Sir Hyde Parker. *If your guns are not better pointed.....Copenhagen*--Notice the beautiful pun on the words 'pointed' and 'impression.' As applied to pen, 'pointed' means 'not blunt, and hence fit for writing with' ; as applied to guns, 'pointed'

means 'aimed' Similarly, as applied to pen, 'impression' means 'writing'; as applied to guns, 'impression' means 'effect' The sentence means—'if the English are as careless in their preparation for war as they seem to be in their writing materials it is impossible for them to conquer Copenhagen'

### Para. 10

*Lead the van*—command the advanced line of the fleet. *The wind would permit*—the wind began to blow favourably. Remember there was a calm for two days. *Alacrity*—promptitude : readiness. *A topsail breeze*—i. e., a moderate breeze, more accurately, a breeze so moderate that it admits of the topsails being spread. *Admiral Graes*—second in command at the Battle of Copenhagen and made a K. C. B. in reward for the action

### Para. 11

*Great actions*—memorable battles. *Given celebrity to*—made famous. *The scenes from whence they are denominated*—the places where those battles were fought and after which those battles have been named. For example in Indian History the village of Plassey, the town of Buxar, Panipat, &c., are known only on account of their being associated with great battles. Otherwise they are places too insignificant to be widely known. *Known only to the coasting trader*—familiar only to those little boats that carry small-wares from one village to another on the coast

[Page 142] *Here*—at Elsinore. *The scene was every way worthy of the Drama*—the place where the battle was fought was an important place already, though it is now chiefly known as the scene of Shakespeare's immortal tragedy of 'Hamlet'. Southey means to say that Elsinore has other importance than that thus given to it by Shakespeare; and this other importance he mentions in the next sentence. *Political importance*—strategic situation. It is politically important because it is the "key to the Baltic Sea". *Grand objects are not needed .... imagination*—it is in itself sufficient to be considered an important place. *Channel*—strait. *The key*—the only mode of ingress into. *Every vessel which*

*passes lowers its topgallant sails*—In Southey's time (and until 1829) ships were compelled to lower their topgallant sails for five minutes in passing the Sound, as a salute to Cronenberg Castle. *Toll*—a tax for using the passage for its purposes. *To have had its origin*—to have been established. *In the consent*—by the common assent *Contributing to them*—the payment of the toll levied towards the construction and maintenance of those lighthouses *Of late years*—recently. *In time of peace*—because this is the time when ships can carry on a busy trade In times of war some ships are employed for purposes of fighting, others are kept back for fear of being captured and robbed by the belligerents *Promontory*—a cape *Tycho Brahe*—a famous Danish astronomer (1546-1601). *Pile*—castle *Helsingburg*—a seaport of Sweden, on the Sound, opposite Elsinore

#### Para 12.

*Lower*—grow less steep *Landsrona*—a seaport of Sweden on the Baltic, 22 miles north of Copenhagen *Lund*—an old town of Sweden, in the province of Gotland *Malmoe*—an important seaport town of Sweden, situated on the Sound, 16 miles from Copenhagen. *Flat*—level ; opposite of mountainous.

[Page 147.] *Denoting the vicinity of a great capital*—It is the general tendency of all who can afford to do so to live as near a big city as possible, on account of the many advantages it affords.

#### Para. 13.

*The recollections which they call forth*—their associations. *Munificent*—generous *Frederick II*—the son and successor of Christian III, of Denmark, ascended the throne in 1559. He was a great friend of learning and a patron of Tycho Brahe and other men of science He waged a long war with Sweden which ended in 1570 He received the order of the Garter from Queen Elizabeth of England and gave his daughter in marriage to James I. *Promoted science*—encouraged scientific discoveries. *Hamlet*—a prince of Denmark. *One of the noblest works of human-genius*—

Shakespeare's immortal play, "Hamlet" *The scene of deeper tragedy*—the place where a more woeful occurrence than the woes of Hamlet and Ophelia took place. *Queen Matilda*—Caroline Matilda, Queen of Christian VII of Denmark, and sister of George III of England. She was imprisoned in Cronenburg Castle in 1784, from which through the influence of George III, she was transferred to Zell in Hanover *The victim of a foul intrigue*—Matilda was married to Christian VII King of Denmark, but having been accused of an intrigue with the minister Struensee, was divorced and sent into exile. She died in 1775. *Heart-breaking*—so heavy as to be almost unbearable. *She took her everlasting leave of that infant*—her infant died. *By the interference of England*—through the influence of George III. *Till the last speck had disappeared*—till the last visible point of land looked in the distance like a black dot, and then became invisible altogether.

#### Para. 14

*The great Mediterranean of the North*—A metaphor that suggests—(1) that the most important countries of Northern Europe are situated by its shores, (2) it is the greatest highway of commerce in Northern Europe, (3) it is a sea surrounded on all sides by land. *Few parts of the sea..... navigation*—i. e., ships are constantly sailing over it. *In the height of the season*—during the best parts of the year.

[Page 148] *So busy or so splendid a scene*—active preparations for war by a large number of ships collected in one place. *Veiled their topsails to the flag of Denmark*—lowered their flags to salute the Danish port. *Corer*—defend; protect from dangers. *Engage*—fire upon and be fired upon by the batteries there. *Ill-timed*—too late. *Baffling*—unfavourable. *Abreast of*—opposite to; off.

#### Para. 15.

*Pompous circumstance*—impressive grandeur. *Exciting*—stirring. *Reality of war*—serious battle, not a sham fight. *Without its effects*—without any serious damage being done. Southey means to say that though the Danes and the Swedes had made such formidable preparations for war, they were

unable to inflict any serious damage on the English. *Ostentatious display*—grand array of batteries and their cannonade. *Bloodless prelude*—an incident that marked the commencement of the battle but caused no loss to the English. *To the wide and sweeping destruction which was soon to follow*—the English were soon able to destroy the Danish and Swedish forts. *Near enough to splash &c*—They did not touch the English ships, but fell into the sea in front of them, and splashed the water into them. *Not relying upon any forbearance of the Swedes*—mid-channel—thinking that, though the Swedes were not firing their batteries yet, they might begin to do so any moment, the English ships intended to stay in the middle of the channel, where they were equally distant from the Danish and the Swedish shores. *They inclined on that side*—the English ships moved further away from the Danish coast towards the coast of Sweden. *Uninterrupted blaze*—continued firing. *Echilate*—amuse. The British sailors laughed to see the Danes firing into the sea. *A full cable's length*—not less than 720 feet. *Short of its destined aim*—away from the English ships. *Round*—broadside fires. *Inutility*—that it was of no use, because it could not touch the Danish ships, which were far away.

[Page 149.] *Innocent*—futile. *Lugger*—a small vessel having three masts and long sails. *Radeaus*—rafts. *Pontoons*—large flat boats. *Galleys*—low flat ships with one deck propelled by sails and oars. *Flanked*—defended on the sides.

### Para. 16.

*Council of war*—a meeting of the chief naval or military officers of an expedition or castle to decide upon the best plans for making an intended attack. *A consideration which ought to be borne in mind*—a point which should not be forgotten. These officers meant to say that the English should keep a reserve force to fight the Swedes and Russians. *Savoured of*—resembled. *If ever it should be his fortune to .. action*—if he should ever have the honour of commanding a Baltic expedition. *Close with a Frenchman but out-manceu-*

*ure a Russian*—the most successful way of fighting with a French fleet is to fight at close quarters; the most successful way of fighting with a Russian fleet is to gain advantage over them by manœuvring. Nelson thought that the Russian fleets were so deficient in manœuvring that superior numbers would be of no use to them against a well manœuvred English fleet.

### Para. 17.

*Buoys*—floating marks to point out shoals or dangerous rocks. *Saw the soundings made*—superintended the work of measuring the depth of the sea in various places

[Page 150] *Laid down*—i. e., placed on shoals or rocks. *Boating it*—sailing in a boat

### Para. 18.

*Opinions inclined to*—the majority of the members favoured *In his first thoughts*—This suggests that Nelson was not one of the officers who had spoken for an eastward attack on the first day.

### Para. 19.

*Riou*—an English captain who commanded the frigate “Amazon” and was killed in the battle of Copenhagen. *Weigh*—set sail. *Shout*—a shout of joy *Coasted along*—sailed along the coast of *Doubled*—turned round.

[Page 151] *Menace*—threaten to attack. *Cover*—protect from capture.

### Para. 20

*Had not been idle*—had been making active preparations for defence *Make it known .....end*—proclaim that war had been declared with the English. *The two crowns*—England and Denmark *A spirit*—a spirit of patriotism *All ranks*—people of all classes *Corps*—regiment. *The flower of Denmark*—the strongest and bravest of the Danish youth *Drilling*—training. *To render courage available*—to enable

brave men to fight effectively. *Most materially*—very seriously. *Of little extent*—narrow. *Mortar-boats*—boats carrying mortars or short guns used for throwing bombshells. *To the utmost advantage*—most effectively. In high wind the bombshells fail to reach the object aimed at. *The bed of the mortar*—the solid piece of timber on which the mortar is mounted.

#### Para. 21.

[Page 152] *Those objects which render death terrible*—such as wife, children, friends, home, &c., separation from whom is the most painful circumstance of death. The English soldiers were dying far from home, and hence death to them was less painful than to the Danes who were dying in their homes. *Drank to a leading wind and to the success of the war*—as he drank he expressed a wish for a favourable wind that would lead them straight to the enemy, and also a wish for victory next day. *Discover him*—betray his presence.

#### Para. 22.

*Fatigue of mind*—anxiety. *Dictate from it*—dictate orders while lying on bed. *Transcribe*—copy. *This important point*—the state of the wind

#### Para. 23.

[Page 153] *Traders*—merchant vessels. *Bearing*—position in relation to the ship's position. *Ominous*—portending danger. *Of how little their knowledge was to be trusted*—of the untrustworthy character of their knowledge. *Steady*—not to get confused. *Resolute*—not to retreat with fear. *Decide*—not to hesitate between two or more courses. *Wanted*—did not possess. *The only ground for steadiness*—a strong sense of duty, based on patriotism, which is essential for steadiness. *Reason to regret that he did not trust to*—occasion to repent of not having directed his movements according to. *Single*—as opposed to the guidance of a number of pilots. *Who have no other thought than to keep.....shot—*



whose only object is to save the ships from splitting on rocks, and save their own lives, fools that they are. They understand nothing of the art of guiding a ship to the most advantageous positions for attack. *If any merit attaches itself to me*—if I am to be given the credit for anything (*combating the dangers of the shallows*)—guiding the ships through the shoals *In defiance of them*—along lines I thought to be the best, notwithstanding anything that the pilots advised to the contrary

#### Para. 24.

*The battle became general*—the whole body of the two fleets was fighting with each other. The word ‘general’ has here to be distinguished from ‘half the fleet’ above.

[Page 151] *But seldom has any plan ... accidents*—but it was completely frustrated by unfavourable circumstances. *Gun brigs*—gunboats. *Weathering*—getting round to the windward of. *The vacant station*—a point where there happened to be no ship. *That unequal force*—only a few frigates, which were insufficient for the purpose of meeting the fire of the Crown Battery.

#### Para. 25.

*That artillery*—the sound of the firing of guns. *Like music*—just as music banishes care from the hearts of men, in the same way did the sound of the firing of guns drive care from Nelson’s heart. *Joyous—Delightful*—The difference between the two is that *joyous* means ‘revealing his own joy,’ and *delightful*, ‘producing joy in the hearer.’ *Animated*—lively ; spirited. *Elevated*—full of lofty thoughts and feelings.

#### Para. 26.

*The real state of the contending parties*—how the battle was going on. *Preponderate*—be stronger than hope of victory. *Endurance*—continuation. *Unslackened*—as brisk as before. *Make the signal of recall*—order my ships to retreat.

[Page 155.] *Too hot*—too heavy and continued *Of the consequences to his own personal reputation*—that a retreat would bring disgrace on him. *If shame it should be deemed*—Sir Hyde's opinion was that to retreat from such an unequal contest (as he thought it to be) was no disgrace. *A mistaken judgment*—a wrong belief, namely that Nelson was being overpowered.

### Para. 27.

*Splinters*—broken parts *It is warm work*—this is a very dangerous battle. *This day may be the last ... moment*—any of us may be killed any moment *At the gangway*—just as he was descending to his cabin *I would not be elsewhere for thousands*—I cannot be persuaded by any considerations to leave the battle *Thousands*—se of pounds *If he should repeat it*—whether he too should hoist the retreat signal. *Acknowledge it*—say you have received the signal *What is shown on board the commander-in-chief*—what signal Sir Hyde has made. *No 39!*—The note of exclamation shows his surprise *Leave off*—discontinue *Shrugging up his shoulders*—a gesture that shows dissatisfaction *Leave off action?*—Do you think I shall retreat? *Hang me if I do*—I am determined not to retreat *I have a right to be blind sometimes*—nobody can find fault with me for not having noticed the signal, for, because I have only one eye, every one expects that I do not see some objects *Glass—telescope* *That mood of mind*—that playful way. *Sports with bitterness*—in which men sometimes beguile their anxiety *When severely oppressed by anxiety or horror* people sometimes resort to jokes to beguile themselves *Shakespeare illustrates this in his Hamlet*—When Hamlet returns to his friends after an interview with the ghost he calls out to Horatio—

“Hillo ho, ho, boy! come bird, come” (I v)

[Page 156] *Hang*—do not care for *Answer*—obey. *Such signals*—cowardly orders *Nail mine to the mast*—I shall not have my signal for close action lowered down. “Sometimes,

however, captains before entering battle do literally have their colours nailed to the mast, so as to indicate their intention of fighting to the last and never surrendering to the enemy. For when the colours are nailed to the mast they cannot be readily lowered in token of surrender in the usual manner by pulling the string. Hence to nail one's colours to the mast has come to be used proverbially to express the resolve to resist to the last" (Macmillan).

### Para. 28.

*By fortunate mistake*—because fortunately he could not interpret the signal correctly. *Hauled off*—retreated. *Stand fast—i e*, cease firing. *What they were about*—what success they had gained. *What will Nelson think of us—i e*, Nelson will think us cowards. *Drew off*—retreated. *Splinter*—a piece of broken mast. *Showed her stern to*—turned back from. *The mainbrace*—the rope by which the main-yard is pulled round. This was done to turn the ship's head. *A raking shot*—a shot passing along the length of the vessel.

*Except it had been Nelson himself . . . loss—i e*. he was the second best officer in the British Navy, and his death was therefore a great loss.

### Para. 29.

*To great advantage*—The advantage was that their ships were not visible, because their masts had been lowered; and hence the English could not aim at them so successfully. *Struck*—lowered. *The hulls could only be seen at intervals*—The lower portion of the ships was enveloped in smoke and hence it could be seen only when the smoke cleared.

### Para. 30.

[Page 157.] *The Prince Royal*—the eldest son of the king of Denmark (Christian VII). This prince afterwards became king of Denmark under the title of Frederick VI. *A courage not more unhappily . . . France—i e*, but the Danes acted very imprudently in espousing the French cause, for which they had their capital bombarded by the English. *Early in*

*the action*—very soon after the commencement of the battle. *Volunteered*—offered *Breastwork*—a railing on the quarter-deck and fore-castle. *Port-holes*—the holes in the sides of a man-of-war for the discharge of shots *Below the reach of the stern chasers*—so that the muzzles of the stern chasers could not be sufficiently lowered so as to hit the boat. The guns at the stern are called the *stern chasers* because they are used by a ship when it is chased by an enemy's ship.

### Para. 31.

[Page 158] *Adrift*—floating at random. *In this manner*—i. e., thus desperately. *Praams*—large flat open boats used in the Baltic for loading and unloading ships. *Able to exert themselves*—who were not badly wounded.

### Para. 32.

[Page 159] *This massacre*—cold blooded murder They were unable to fight and yet they were being fired upon. *Peculiar to himself*—thoroughly characteristic *Brothers*—because the English nation is a mixed people, having a Danish element too We remember that the Danes used to invade Britain and made several settlements in it *Wafer*—a thin leaf of paste, spread over with gum-water, and dried—used in sealing letters *Worked*—approach. *This formidable work*—namely, the Trekroner Battery.

### Para. 33.

*The yet uninjured part of the Danish line*—the Trekroner Battery, for instance. *Adjutant-general*—the principal staff officer of the army. *Humble duty*—i. e., respects *Overture*—proposal of peace. *Critical*—because the wind might any moment change and make it very difficult for him to get out of the intricate harbour. *Immediately under*—directly in the direction of.

### Para. 34.

*Double-headed*—bicipital. *Heart*—centre. *Sent over her side*—knocked down.

[Page 161] *Taking her*—overtaking her. *Amidships*—halfway between the head and the stern. *Became fast-stuck* *Heat of action*—the excitement of the battle *That kind of feeling*—a feeling of melancholy *Pressed heavily on his exhausted spirits*—overpowered him, tired as he was *Overcast*—cloudy *White flags*—flags of truce *Shattered ships*—the Danish ships which had surrendered. *The grief was to come*—no one was yet aware of the names of those of his fellows that had been killed *The account of the dead* ... *up*—the list of the dead had not yet been prepared *A weight*—a source of pain. *Blew up*—exploded. *Put off*—sailed.

### Para. 35.

*The fate*—Some were burned and some were drowned *Impression of retributive justice*—the feeling of a due vengeance. *Stern*—less tender At the battle of the Nile, Nelson was not so much moved at the sight of the burning French ships as he was here, because he entertained a feeling of vengeance for the French who had severely offended him, which he did not do in the case of the Danes. *Austere delight*—hard-hearted joy *The appointed minister*—the officer who had been entrusted with the duty of wreaking the vengeance.

[Page 162] *They were of English mould*—they were similar in character to the English *Of English blood*—they belong to the same Teutonic race to which the English belong These considerations influenced Nelson to feel pity for the Danes *Reflection*—consideration. *Mingled*—was added to *These melancholy thoughts*—the considerations that influenced him to feel pity *Predisposed him*—had made him already inclined *Not master of his movements*—not in chief command *In so far as he had been successful* *judgment*—the victory he had gained by disobeying the orders of the commander-in-chief showed that the commander-in-chief had made a culpable blunder in passing those orders. *Hanged*—that is the punishment for gross disobedience.

## Para. 36.

*This was the language of a man who, &c*—these words clearly show that Nelson's mind was oppressed by anxiety for the consequences he had risked by disobeying orders ; for men sometimes express an anxious thought playfully, because they feel they have betrayed it imprudently Nelson spoke playfully of the punishment he had risked by disobeying orders, because the fear for it was troubling him, and so he naturally sought relief by expressing it. But even in expressing it he thought he had acted improperly ; and so he tried to laugh it away *Jealous of his own authority*—careful not to have his orders disobeyed *Suspension of hostilities*—truce. *Mangled*—wounded.

## Para. 37.

*Good Friday*—Good Friday is a mournful day for Christians, because it is the anniversary of Christ's crucifixion It was therefore by a strange coincidence that Good Friday fell on a day when almost every house in Copenhagen was mourning for the death of members who fell in the battle *Made all distinction of days be forgotten*—made it impossible for them to observe the Good Friday.

[Page 163] *Felt the consolations of Christianity*—died peacefully like true Christians or bore their afflictions patiently *Who needed the consolations of Christianity*—who were left behind to mourn for those who had been killed in the battle *Perhaps*—This word suggests that about half the population of Copenhagen perished in this battle. *Its observances*—the ceremonies usually performed on Good Friday *Distributing*—placing a few on board each of their ships *They were not near enough*—the ships were too far away from the Danish ships to be able to fire muskets at them *Were not wanted at the guns*—though they were near enough for guns, there were men who were working the guns already, so these soldiers were not required there. *Wiped away*—removed *Drawn up*—marshalled in a row. *Gangway*—a platform of planks leading from the

quarter-deck to the fore-castle. In this high position the soldiers were much exposed to the enemy's fire. *To satisfy this cruel point of honour*—to save them the disgrace of having hidden themselves below the deck, which resulted in the needless slaughter of these soldiers. *Without the possibility of annoying the enemy*—although they were absolutely of no use in fighting. *Mowed down*—killed in large numbers and very easily

### Para. 38.

*This*—namely, the entry of an enemy's admiral into the city that he had been so lately bombarding. *Wounds—damage Acclamations*—any strong demonstration of joy. *Murmurs*—any strong expression of dissatisfaction. *Did not degrade themselves with the former*—were not so servile as to welcome him with shouts of joy. *Nor disgrace themselves with the latter*—nor were they so treacherous as to attempt molestation. *Preliminaries*—first drafts. *Adjusted—settled.*

[Page 161] *Bore testimony to*—expressed his admiration of. *Stood*—continued, resisted. *If, my lord, I am to make all service*—In other words, all the captains and lieutenants of my navy are very brave.

### Para 39.

*Was not weakened by distance of time or place*—Their sympathy was very strong for a long time afterwards; not only the inhabitants of Copenhagen but those of other parts of Denmark also sympathised with them. *Circumstances—ceremonies Pardonable*—because it was due to their patriotism. *Sophistry*—false reasoning. *Represented .. . side*—stated that the Danes had been victorious. *Less disputable*—true. *Ground of satisfaction*—reason why the Danes should rejoice in Nelson's victory. *As may be inferred from his name—Neilson*, the Danish form of Nelson, is a common name in Denmark.

## Para. 41.

*Shoal*—shallow ; here an adjective. *The proofs and trophies of his victory*—the Danish ships he had captured. *Thus*—by the ships being burnt.

## Para 42

*Hulks and floats*—miserable ships which it was useless to carry to England *Weighed*—carefully considered

[Page 166.] *Dismantling*--taking away some masts, sails, &c.

## Para. 43.

*Armistice*—peace *Armament*—the guns with which a ship is armed *Hostile position*—position in relation to the enemy's ships. *The treaty of armed neutrality.....suspended*—Denmark severed its connection with the Armed Neutrality. *That they might be carried to Great Britain's credit in the account of war*—The metaphor is here taken from the business of banking. For every prisoner restored to Denmark she would have to restore one English prisoner. If any British prisoners were subsequently taken by the Danes, they would have to be restored until Denmark's number of restored prisoners was equal to that restored by the English. *In case hostilities should be renewed*—if the war broke out again. *Commissioners*—statesmen empowered to conclude the treaty.

## Para. 44

*Amicably*—without rupture or quarrel; peacefully. *Broke up*—went away. *Levee*—state reception

[Page 167] *To a bombardment. . . . .this time*—Nelson expected that he would not be able to agree with the Danes in the matter of the treaty and that he would have to bombard Copenhagen again. *All this will burn well*—all this is admirably inflammable material that will quickly catch fire when I bombard Copenhagen. *Was closetted with*—had a private interview with.



## Para 45

*Viscount*—a nobleman next below an earl. *Dealing out*—granting. *Fought his way up to a dukedom*—won victory after victory till he was finally made a Duke, the highest rank of the peerage

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

## NELSON AGAIN IN THE MEDITERRANEAN.

## Para. 1.

*The dilatoriness and indecision*—See p 142, ll 23 et seq in which Nelson expresses the same dissatisfaction to Sir Hyde Parker *Cou'd not remedy*—because he was not in chief command *What*—the pain *I make no scruple in saying*—I declare without any hesitation *Carlsrona*—a strongly fortified seaport of Sweden, on the Baltic, and the principal depot of the Swedish navy *Take any of those laurels . . . there*—get for myself any of the glory he would acquire there

## Para. 2.

*A climate*—a very cold climate. *More genial latitudes*—milder climates ; such as those of the Mediterranean coast. *The northern business*—the object of the Baltic Expedition. *The keen air*—the excessively cold climate *Cut him to the heart*—badly damaged his health. *Affected his spirits*—irritated him.

## Para. 3.

[Page 169] *Touched the ground*—ran aground. *Stuck fast*—remained firmly fixed *Breaking up of the frost*—melting of the frozen sea-water, i. e., before spring set in.

## Para. 4

*Drew too much water*—was a too big ship *Being lightened*—being made less heavy *Under such an expectation*—when he looked forward to fighting a battle with the enemy. Nelson's

eagerness to fight battles was so strong that he overcame the heaviest difficulties to reach the scene of action. *Forbade them to return for one*—because that would have taken time, and he was too impatient to wait

#### Para. 5.

*Brönholm*—an island of Sweden in the Baltic

[Page 170] *The hostile measures which it had taken. .... Great Britain*—the Armed Neutrality *Come within the particular circle of*—immediately concern; directly pertain to

#### Para. 6.

*Gustavus*—Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden. *Engagement*—treaty. *His allies*—Denmark and Russia. *Deputies*—representatives. *Furnished with proper authority*—duly commissioned.

#### Para. 7.

*Gulf of Finland*—one of the great arms of the Baltic Sea to the east of Sweden *Dispatch boat*—a boat carrying an urgent message. *Alexander*—Alexander I. who reigned from 1801 to 1825. Finding that the commerce of Russia was greatly crippled by the naval ascendancy of the British, he took immediate steps to conclude peace with England. Accordingly a convention took place, and an agreement was signed on the 17th of June 1801. *Convention*—treaty.

#### Para. 8.

*With effect*—successfully. *In a situation to act*—ready to engage in war *The wind was fair for Revel*—the wind was blowing in such a direction that they could easily sail to Revel *This offer should prove insincere*—the Russians should subsequently withdraw the offer of peace and prepare for war

[Page 171] *Effected all that was necessary*--was virtually equivalent to peace. *The manner of that death*—the fact that the Emperor Paul I. of Russia was assassinated by his own

subjects who wanted him to abdicate in favour of his son. *That a change of policy. .... Petersburg*—that the Russians had grown tired of the war, and that they would soon offer terms of peace to England. *Trusted anything to*—depended in the least upon. *The uncertain events of time*—chance. *Which could possibly be secured by promptitude or resolution*—if he could achieve his end by strenuous exertion. Nelson was a man of principle, and hence never depended for anything on chance. For, as George Eliot says, “favourable chance is the god of all men who follow their own devices instead of obeying a law they believe in” (*Silas Marner*).

*Zealand*—a very fertile island of Denmark, 700 miles in circumference, situated at the entrance of the Baltic. *Kioe Bay*—a seaport of Denmark, in the isle of Zealand, 10 miles south of Copenhagen

#### Para. 10.

*Now*—now that Nelson was put in the chief command. *Launches*—long flat-bottomed boats used to lay out anchors and go to and from the shore. *Disturb the returning harmony*—renew hostilities

#### Para. 11.

*Effects*—property. *Violently*—by force. *Commit the affairs of my country*—pledge England. *To mix the affairs of Denmark and Sweden .....ships*—to represent her molestation of the British in Russia as anyway connected with her alliance with Sweden and Denmark in the Armed Neutrality.

#### Para. 12.

[Page 172] *The mole*—here, the harbour (Revel). *Before that time it had lain at the mercy of the English*—i.e. had Sir Hyde Parker not lain idly in Kioe Bay, the English fleet could have successfully blockaded the Russian fleet in Revel.

#### Para. 13.

*It so happened that there was no cause to regret .....lost*—the Russians were sincerely desirous of making peace with

the English; hence the English cause did not suffer in the least by allowing the Russian fleet to escape from Revel. *Put the intentions of Russia to the proof*—ascertained whether the Russians were really in favour of peace. *Return a salute*—Friendly ships fire guns to salute each other.

#### Para. 14.

*There was a suspicion implied in this*—This demand on the part of the Russians showed that they suspected hostile intentions from the English.

*Stung*—offended.

#### Para. 15.

*Word*—promise. *Sacred*—inviolable.

[Page 173] *The act of amity*—the document embodying the terms of peace *Seamen*—Nelson is here alluding to himself *Bad negotiators*—not very expert in the art of diplomacy. *Put to issue*—bring to a decision. *What*—proposals which *Diplomatic forms would be five months long*—if we were to proceed in accordance with the regular procedure of diplomatic intercourse, would take five months to decide.

#### Para. 16.

*Down the Baltic*—out of the Baltic *Going straight to their object*—being direct and straightforward in their negotiations *Seaman-like*—with the frankness of sailors *Rosstock*—a seaport town of Russia, 9 miles from the mouth of the Warrow in the Baltic *The Queen's brother*—brother of Queen Charlotte, Queen of George III *Mecklenburg*—a grand duchy in the north of Germany to the south of the Baltic. *The name of Nelson written by his own hand*—Nelson's autograph signature

#### Para. 17.

*The temper.....naturally arose from the chastisement*—i. e., the Danes were inwardly hostile to England. *The chastise-*

ment ....received—This refers to the bombardment of Copenhagen by Nelson *Having the upper hand of them*—having, gained a victory over them *We have*—that we were the victors.

### Para. 18.

*Was not deceived*... *Cabinet*—was correct in his opinion of the intentions of the Danish Government. *Crippled*—weakened

[Page 172] *The confederacy*—the league—the Armed Neutrality. *Defer*—postpone *Indulgence*—gratification. *Working*—sailing with great difficulty

### Para. 19.

*Expected*—because the English people trusted Nelson and were aware of his great powers *Jutland*—the northern part of Denmark *Tonningen*—a town of Denmark in the duchy of Schleswig It is seated on a peninsula formed by the river Eyder, where there is a commodious harbour. *Few admirals would have done*—because it would be beneath their dignity to travel in a barge *The late battle*—the battle of the Baltic *Or more importance than the battle of the Nile*—because it broke a formidable combination of the Northern European powers.

### Para. 20.

*A service*—namely, to repel Napoleon's threatened invasion of England *For which no Nelson was required*—a scheme which was absurd in itself, for "the invulnerable isle" could not, from its very nature, be invaded by a foe No great hero was therefore necessary to defend Britain's shores Of Shakespeare.—

"This England never hath nor never shall  
Lie at the proud foot of a conqueror"

—*King John.*

*His schemes in the Baltic*—his plan of allying himself with Denmark, Sweden and Russia against Great Britain

[Page 172.] *Intoxicated*—encouraged in such a degree as almost to lose his senses. *All things.....fortune*—he would be successful in everything he undertook. *Unreflecting multitude*—the ignorant common people. *Were not to be persuaded.....fleets—i. e.*, were seized with panic at the threat of a foreign invasion. *In condescension to this unworthy feeling*—to allay the popular fear. *Beachy Head*—the loftiest promontory on the south coast of England.

#### Para. 21.

*Boulogne*—an old seaport town of France, 19 miles south-west of Calais. *The great attempt*—namely, the French invasion of England. *Enough*—sc. damage. *Flushing*—a fortified seaport and the most important naval station of the Netherlands. *Flanders*—on the north-east coast of France. *Forlorn*—doomed to failure. *Cross-tides*—contrary currents.

[Page 176.] *Prepared for a mad Government*—Nelson means that the French, being madmen, are capable of undertaking anything however impossible ; and so it is better to be on our guard.

#### Para. 22.

*Literally at the foundation.....defence*—just beginning to make our preparations for defence. *Rolling ground*—disturbed undulating water. *Harwich*—a seaport of Essex. *Tolerable*—fairly expert. *The Naze*—a promontory south of Harwich. *His name needed no memorial*—he was already an immortal hero.

#### Para. 23.

*Nelson's eye was upon Flushing*—he expected that the French invasion would come from Flushing. *Flotilla*—fleet of small ships. *Preposterously*—absurdly. Because there was really no danger of invasion at all. *Boat warfare*—attacking the French boats by means of English boats.

[Page 177.] *Not congenial to his feelings*—distasteful to him ; he did not like it. *Helvoet*—a fortified seaport in the south of Holland. *Turned their thoughts that way*—wanted

to have it attacked *I require nursing like a child*—my health is very delicate. *My mind carries me beyond my strength*—my impulsive and active nature leads me to undertake acts which I have no strength to perform *Do me up*—bring about my death. *Such is my nature*—I cannot help it.

#### Para. 24.

*Essay*—attempt *Tide and half tide*—an irregularity in the setting in of the tides consisting in the fact that sometimes high tide out at sea is three hours later than it is near the shore It is very difficult to sail during such periods *Braced up*—fastened.

#### Para. 25.

*Hailed the boats*—called out to the men in the boats *To keep your distance*—to remain at a cautious distance, not to come near *Do nothing*—gain no success

[Page 178.] *Boasted of the victory*—contains the statement that the French gained the victory *Would have cause to make the remark*—could not ignore the fact *Had our force arrived &c*—had not some of the English divisions been separated from the rest *It was not all the chains in France* vessels—the English could have captured the whole French fleet in spite of the strong chains with which they had been fastened to the shore

#### Para. 26.

*If I were to say I was content, I should die*—*e.*, my grief is inconsolable. *Heal*—enable me to forget the sorrow

*Which he had submitted to*—he had obeyed his countrymen who trusted him by undertaking this service of defending the British coast from a French invasion *Be the only one*—be carried on independently of larger ships

#### Para. 27.

[Page 179] *Seriously indisposed*—in bad health *The Mediterranean*—the naval command in the Mediterranean. *The peace of Amiens*—concluded in 1802 between Great

Britain, Holland, France and Spain, by which (1) Great Britain surrendered, all its conquests except Ceylon and Trinidad ; (2) the French were to evacuate Naples and the Papal States ; (3) Egypt was restored to the Sultan ; (4) the Republic of the Ionian islands was to be recognized ; and (5) the integrity of Portugal was guaranteed *The experiment*—Nelson called the peace of Amiens an experiment, because he knew that it could not last long, and was not intended to last long. *He saw what he called the misery of peace* ..... *ascertained*—he was sure that ruin would be the result if during the interval of peace, the English did not try their best to prepare for another war.

*The manner in which the mob of London .. . general*—the disgraceful way in which they did it It is said that they welcomed him by pulling his carriage through the streets. *Ashamed of his country*—because the English behaved as though the conclusion of peace saved them from ruin at the hands of the French.

#### Para. 28.

*Everything which Lady Hamilton had done to it*—the tasteful way in which it had been decorated *The longest liver* whichever of the three survived the other two. *A brother's widow*—the widow of his brother Maurice who died in 1801. *Pecuniary embarrassment*—difficulties about money : debt *The claims which would necessarily ... .. bounty*—the large demands which as a matter of course were made upon him.

#### Para. 29.

*Depression of spirits*—melancholy. *This state of his circumstances*—his pecuniary embarrassment. *Disquietudes*—quarrels ; disturbances.

#### Para. 30.

[Page 180]. *The common council*—sc of London. *The navy would ruin them in gifts*—the navy would gain a series of brilliant victories, rewards for all of which would deprive them of all their wealth. *Do you find victories*—let it be your duty to gain victories.



## Para. 31

*Was of no long continuance*—did not last long *What she had done for her country*—It was by her influence with the Queen of Naples that Nelson's fleet could procure supplies at Syracuse, before he started for Egypt when he defeated the French at the battle of the Nile. *Codicil*—a supplement to a will. *Upon the gratitude of the country*—to a pension which the English nation should gratefully grant her. *Barren*—not accompanied by any order for a pension. *Message to Parliament*—sc communicating the news of the renewal of the war.

## Para. 32.

[Page 181.] *The city*—the city of London *Their omission*—the fact of their not thanking the Baltic fleet at the conclusion of the Baltic expedition *There is not that man breathing who—i e., no one.* *To receive them for a particular service.. . line of service*—to accept thanks for something I well know I never did. *It is there*—it is at sea *What Nelson means* is that he hopes to fight a regular battle with the French ships in the open sea, and does not wish them to keep themselves confined within the harbour.

## Para. 33.

*Flag-officers*—admirals. *Asperity*—bitterness *Than an offence so entirely and manifestly deserved*—Nelson wrote to the county council of the city of London in very strong language, which was absolutely unmerited, for the council had omitted to mention the junior officers in their vote of thanks by a sheer oversight, as was quite obvious,—for they could have no grudge against them. *Regard for the feelings*—Nelson was very sorry for their disappointment.

## Para. 34.

*He governed men by their reason and their affections*—his influence over men was due to the fact of their knowing his merits and their loving him. *He possessed their confidence*—they trusted him. *Nel*—a diminutive of endearment of

'Nelson' *Severe discipline*—for example inflicting punishment for every slight offence, enjoining strict obedience to departmental rules, &c. *Bred in a severe school*—trained with strict discipline. *Corporal*—bodily. Such as flogging, which is a common mode of punishment in the army and the navy. *Who was familiar with wounds and death*—being a very tender-hearted man from his experience of war. *Suffered like a woman*—felt very great pain. *Unkindly*—harshly. *There was no occasion for him to ruin a poor wretch . . . himself*—it was of no use for him to inflict additional punishment on a man who was already sufficiently punished by his crimes. Nelson's idea was that the very fact of a man's having committed a crime was a sufficient punishment. He used to pity a criminal more than show anger. *In Nelson there was more than the easiness and humanity of a happy nature*—Nelson was not, like an ordinary good man, merely kind and gentle : he was actively benevolent (as is stated in the next sentence) *Active and watchful benevolence*—he was unremitting in his efforts to assist those that needed help, and used to take measures to ascertain what people needed help. *Render justice*—give each man what he deserved. *Do good*—give poor men more than they deserved. He was not only just but benevolent. The difference between justice and benevolence is that justice regards both merits and defects ; benevolence overlooks defects and magnifies merits. *During the peace*—the interval of peace from 1802 to 1804. *The abuses respecting prize-money*—one of these was that in the Baltic expedition the captured Danish ships had been burnt and the crews who boarded them were defrauded of their prize-money. *Submitted plans*—suggested means. *More easily manning the navy*—a more successful system of recruitment. *Desertion*—the act of sailors running away after enlistment. *Bettering*—improving. *Certificates*—testimonials of good service or good conduct. *Registered*—Government should keep a record of the men whose conduct was distinguished. *Bounty*—pension.

[Page 183] *The interest of the money saved by their not deserting . . . . . expense*—Nelson's plan was to pay these extra

bounties from the interest of the money that would be saved by the prevention of desertion, which Nelson's scheme was calculated to bring about Nelson estimated the average cost of training a sailor at £20, he also pointed out that 42,000 sailors had deserted after the Baltic expedition That amounted to a loss of £840,000, or 800,000 guineas. Now the interest of that sum @ 5% (not a very large rate of interest then) would be £42,000 or 40,000 guineas, which is sufficient to grant a bounty of two guineas annually to 20,000 sailors, and of four guineas annually to 10,000.

### Para. 35.

*Winning*—attractive; charming *The diffident*—those of the boys who were hopeless of qualifying as expert sailors *Tempering*—teaching them to be moderate *Be-friending*—helping *You must be a seaman to be an officer*—you should first learn to obey before you can command, you must first do rough work before you can qualify yourself for higher work *You cannot be a good officer without being a gentleman*—you must be polite and forbearing, otherwise you would be unpopular and hence unable to command discipline *Lieutenant*—the second officer of a ship *He was dissatisfied with his captain*—so and therefore prayed to be transferred to another ship *Bright*—meritorious, distinguished *Have much to learn*—be wanting in experience *The chance is*—it is highly probable *Your present situation must be disagreeable*—you do not like to continue in the ship any longer *Another*—another captain

[Foot Note p 183—*Tearing the heart out of a book*—mastering the contents of a book in a very short time. *Porning over*—reading *Solicitude*—anxiety *Ottoman*—a stuffed seat *Lashed*—joined, tied *Snatch a few winks of sleep*—take a short nap.]

### Para. 36.

[Page 184] *Benignity*—kindness *Never made him forge* ... *discipline*—i.e., though he was kind and gentle, he was nevertheless a very strict disciplinarian *Applied to*—peti-

tioned *Intercession*—recommendation *If he were here*—if he were the judge : if he were in my place *Contrition*—deep sorrow for the misconduct *Acknowledgement*—confession. *Inclosing*—properly, putting within an envelope ; here simply writing *The letters*—the young officer's letter of contrition and the captain's letter of recommendation *Pushed himself forward to notice*—made himself known for an act of misbehaviour Hence, Nelson means, he cannot hush up the matter. *Consequence*—importance *For ever*—in every case. *His superiors*—The object of emphasizing the word *his* is to suggest that each individual sailor is in every way bound to respect and obey his officers

### Para. 37.

*Called forth Nelson's zeal*—caused him to do whatever he could *For the rights and interests*—to enforce the rights and protect the interests. *What related to the mortars*—the duties immediately connected with the guns,—namely. firing, clearing, loading, &c. *Have it established*—prove *Their corps*—their company. *Not subject to the captain's authority*—because, as they thought, they belonged to the Army which was a service independent of the Navy, so that the naval officers had no authority over them *Pretensions*—claims. *Rested*—based *On board*—while engaged in naval service. *Clause*—section *The act*—the Parliamentary Statute. *Which they interpreted in their favour*—which was never intended by the legislature to mean that army officers were independent of a naval captain's authority even when serving in his ship they interpreted it to mean that *Importance*—The question of the separation of the military and naval services was a very important question. because unless military officers when in naval employ were put under the orders of naval officers there could not be that control and discipline which is essential to efficiency and success

[Page 185 ] *With all content and smiles around me*—even at a moment when I was absolutely free from all anxiety and perfectly happy *Up start these artillery boys &c*—the dispute about the control of these artillery officers has come to disturb me. *Set us at defiance*—declare that the naval officers

have no authority over them. *With your quickness*—had you taken up the matter with your wonted alacrity *Been broke*—been dismissed for insubordination and ruined *On the eve of quitting*—very soon about to leave. *The theatre of our exploits*—the world, where we won our victories We are old men now, and will soon die, so that the question does not affect us personally. *We hold it due*—we consider it to be our duty *A tongue to speak or a hand to write*—i.e., any powers of making a protest

### Para. 38.

*The old history*—the same thing as has happened so often before *Do away the act of parliament*—establish something contrary to the statute regulating the naval service. *Farewell to our naval superiority*—England will no longer be the mistress of the sea *We should be prettily commanded*—we shall have worthless officers *Let them once gain the step of* &c.—i.e. if they can in any way get rid of the control of naval officers *Have the other*—gain a further advantage. *My career is nearly run*—I am on the eve of retirement. *Embitter*—render unhappy *Expiring moments*—the moment of death *Sacrificed to the army*—rendered absolutely worthless by being made subordinate to the army.

### Para. 39.

*At the moment*—on the spot Promotions and rewards should be granted during the progress of a battle or a war; in other words they should be made by the commander

[Page 186]. *In whose behalf he had interested himself*—whom he had recommended for promotion *Friendly interference*—recommendation *God-send*—an unexpected piece of good fortune coming from an unknown source *Added to its glories*—distinguished themselves in naval warfare *Legacies to the service*—people who had a sort of legal claim to being employed in the navy. *Rodney*—Admiral Rodney, who in 1782 defeated the French near Dominica in the West Indies. *A Rodney*—such a distinguished admiral as Rodney. *Protege*—ward; one under the care and protection of

another Every Englishman should consider it to be his duty to help such a one *This claimant*—a son of Admiral Rodney who was a candidate for employment in the navy. *Given way to such a name*—been rejected in favour of one who is the son of one of our great admirals *She is full*—there are no vacancies in her staff. *Twenty on my list*—twenty names on the list containing the names of candidates for naval offices. *Cut many of them out*—be preferred before many of them.

#### Para. 40.

*What was due to*—the claims of. *Not intended for any other.....own*—a private diary. *An old Agamemnon*—a sailor who had formerly served under me on board the Agamemnon.

#### Para. 41

*An active service*—a command in which he would be required to fight battles with the French. *The perfidious Corsican*—Bonaparte. Southey calls Napoleon by this name also in his Ode—

“ If that perfidious Corsican maintain  
Still his detested reign ”

*Now sole tyrant of France*—In 1804 Bonaparte declared himself Emperor of the French under the title of Napoleon I. *As ready to attack his friends as his enemies*—At p 68, Southey has “treaties and rights of neutral or friendly powers were as little regarded by him as by the government for which he acted.” *It had as many destinations as there were countries*—it might go and attack any country at all, because Bonaparte is totally regardless of treaties of alliance, of provocation or non-provocation, of neutrality or hostility *Momentous revolutions*—important changes *Ample matter for reflection*—a good many subjects to think upon ; a number of projects to work. *The film was cleared from his eyes*—he saw the state of affairs as they were.

[Page 178.] *When the French no longer went abroad.....equality*—now that the extreme republican party of France

had been overthrown In 1799 Napoleon was appointed First Consul for ten years Before that date the object of the French was to overthrow all monarchical governments and set up republics in their place in all countries This led to great excesses both at home and abroad These excesses were put an end to and order restored when Napoleon was made First Consul *The powers*—the European nations *The film was cleared from his eyes, and now, when the French... before them*—The idea of the sentence is — When Napoleon declared himself Emperor in 1804, it was expected that he had a large number of projects to carry out. He was now able to see the state of affairs at home and abroad as they actually were because the excesses of the Revolution were over He saw that the successes the French had achieved in upsetting the governments of so many countries were due to the weakness of those countries ; and he determined to take advantage of that weakness to conquer those countries for himself *If it had been possible longer to blind himself, Nelson would . . . evil*—Nelson's belief was that Sicily was uninfected with republican ideas and did not favour the French and he would have continued in that belief had it not been for the fact that the Sicilians openly declared themselves for a change of government *They had reason to wish for it*—they had been oppressed by the king of Naples and so they wanted a republic *Burden—misery* *The first and most important duties*—to save its subjects from plunder and death *The Barbary pirates*—pirates from the coast of Africa Algiers in the north of Africa was then a nest of pirates *Establishment*—The establishment of a country consists of its civil and military officers

#### Para. 42.

*This important point*—Sardinia. *Afforded our fleet facilities for watching Toulon*—because Sardinia is very near the southern coast of France *Sardes*—Sardinians

*Views of wider ambition . . . Bonaparte*—Bonaparte was meditating upon vaster projects. *Undisguisedly*—openly.

*The former*—namely, her effort to drive the French out of Italy in which the Austrians had been defeated at the battle of Montenotte *Was once more .. France*—was about to join the French.

#### Para. 43.

[Page 188] *The double object of* &c —(1) to secure the aid of the Spaniards in fighting the English; (2) thereby to weaken Spain, and then to conquer it. *The Peninsula*—Spain *Resume her national rank among the nations*—be once more counted as an independent state *Court of Madrid*—Spanish government *The appearances of neutrality were scarcely preserved*—Spain was openly aiding the French.

#### Para. 44.

*Revised*—re-enacted. *Barcelona*—a Spanish port. *Catalonia*—an old province of Spain situate in the north-east part of the kingdom *Make large allowances*—excuse many of her acts. *Given up*—abstained from attacking.

#### Para. 45

*To which the weakness of Spain but not her will consented*—Spain allowed this state of affairs to continue because she was too weak to dare to offend the French, and not because such a state of affairs suited her wishes *Unremitting*—ceaseless *His home*—because he was so constantly there *In the right fighting trim*—admirably fitted for battle

[Page 189] *Would to God the ships..... good*—He means that the ships are damaged and rotten and cannot stand rough weather *Bad season*—period of rough weather.

#### Para. 46.

*Anything short of this*—i. e., vague conjectures about their destination. &c *You think yours good*—you think that the Frenchman you propose to send is fit to be trusted. *The Queen*—sc of Naples *Alike*—equally treacherous *Not a Frenchman comes here*—I shall not allow a Frenchman to come on board my ship. *My mother hated the French*—This



might mean that he had inherited his mother's hatred of the French Nelson could not have known his mother's hatred of the French because she died when Nelson was only nine years old Probably it is merely a playful explanation of his own hatred, and nothing more. *Sent for*—called to take the command of the Toulon fleet *As he beat me*—as the French believed that he had defeated Nelson on a former occasion Of course this was a lie, and it is the falsehood of the statement that is suggested by Nelson's emphasising the word. *In so novel a situation*—chasing the English, a thing they never did before. *Log*—the daily record of a ship's movements and anything else of interest that may happen in the course of each day.

[Page 190] *If his character was not established..... run away*—if he was not already believed to be a man who would never run away *Put the world right*—try to prove that he had not fled *If this fleet gets fairly up with M. LaTouche*—i. e., if the English fleet finds an opportunity of fighting a regular battle with the French fleet under LaTouche. *His letter, with all his ingenuity, must be different from his last*—i. e., we hope to deal him such a heavy defeat that he will not again falsely boast of having defeated us as did last time *His water line*—i. e., the way he fled A water-line is an imaginary horizontal line round the ship at the water's edge. *Clued his topsails up*—hailed his topsails up to the yard in order to furl them. This is done to stop the ship *Shutting in Sepet*—obstructing our view of Sepet, a cape on the left of the entrance into the harbour of Toulon *His meeting Captain Hawker in the Isis*—This happened in June 1780 off Sandy Hook on the coast of America There was a short battle after which the enemies separated. *I never heard of his acting .. har*—he has throughout behaved like a coward and told lies The charge of cowardice and falsehood is based on an article that was published in a French newspaper in which it was stated that the *Isis* owed her safety to flight Nelson thinks this was false and that it was the French ship under LaTouche that had fled and not the English

ship under Hawker. Notice that Nelson does not mean that previous to his meeting Captain Hawker, LaTouche was a good man ; he only means to say that ever since his name crept into notoriety he has always been known for a coward and a liar. *Miscreant*—traitor. *He shall eat it*—These words are to be taken literally The threat is a very appropriate one, as those who are compelled to admit the falsehood of what they have stated are said to “eat their words.”

### Para. 48.

*Elude his vigilance*—escape unperceived. *Administering him*—giving him to eat. *Sandwich*—a preparation made of two slices of bread with meat or some other savoury food inserted between them. *That would be his death*—that he would die of fear of the English. *Added ten years to my life*—Nelson means that his disappointment in not being able to catch LaTouche will hasten his own death. *Patience*—*Perseverance*—The difference between the two is that patience is the quality of endurance without murmuring ; perseverance consists in determined continuance with a definite object in view. *Upon the king's service*—on duty. *Severe*—stormy. *The Mediterranean seemed altered*—it was wholly unlike the weather that generally prevails in the Mediterranean Sea. *Contend with the gales*—try to sail during a storm

[Page 191.] *Easy*—not liable to suffer any damage. *Flesh and blood could hardly stand it*—the weather was so bad that it was impossible for any human being not to fall ill. *He could only last.....over*—he believed he would soon die

### Para. 49.

*Run a glorious race*—my career has been very distinguished. *This was the only evil which he could not..... unhappiness*—he felt very miserable whenever he thought that he might lose his other eye too some day. *More alarming symptoms. .. apprehension*—he was not so afraid of a graver injury. *Shattered carcass*—He is referring to the loss of his right arm and right eye. *I am fast asleep*—I shall die. *In worse trim*—more damaged. *A-right English feeling*—a

spirit of firm confidence in the superiority of English sailors over the French. *To appearance in high feather*—apparently in excellent condition *Paint*—colouring and varnishing *Weather-beaten*—damaged by storms *Like a plum pudding*—thickly studded with shots, as a plum-pudding is thickly studded with plums or raisins

### Para. 50

*Lavish her resources*—spend a large amount of her money. *Her blood*—have a large number of her soldiers killed *In furtherance of*—to promote *A perfidious ally*—France who while professing friendship to Spain was treacherously aiming to conquer it for herself *Furnish means*—assist *Unhappy*—they brought about a disaster, they infuriated the Spaniards, they grieved the English. *A point of honour*—a course that they felt themselves bound to adopt in order to escape disgrace

[Page 192] *Might have been spared*—might not have taken place, as the Spanish treasure-ships would then have surrendered without disgrace to a superior English force *Those who were its unwilling instruments*—the English who did not intend to burn the ship,

### Para. 51.

*He had sufficient mortification*—he had occasion to feel extremely grieved and disappointed *Enrich*—They would have numerous chances of receiving prize-money *Harvest*—immense gain. *A separate command*—i. e. he was not to act under Nelson's orders *In the first flow and freshness of indignation*—when his anger was very severe because very recent *A dream, an idle dream*—merely a vain supposition. *Thus they use me*—they treat me most ungratefully in return The ingratitude consisted in their having sent another admiral to command the operations jointly with Nelson *And under what circumstances*. . . *aggravation*—the circumstances of the offence and the manner of giving it make the offence all the graver. *The sting*—the offence *A band of brothers*—a company of sailors and officers whom I love. *My heart swells*—I am filled with joy and pride.

## Para. 52.

*The Madelena Islands*—a small island to the north north-east of Sardinia, between Sardinia and Corsica *Unmoored*—pulled up the anchors.

[Page 193]. *Its leader*—the ship immediately in front of it *The one fleet*—namely, the French fleet *The other*—namely, the English fleet *Beat about*—kept sailing hither and thither in search of the French fleet.

## Para. 53.

*His former pursuits of the French*—See Chap V He had then pursued the French from Sicily to Alexandria, then north to Carmania and back to Sicily, to the Morea, and down again to Alexandria where he found them. *His judgment might be erroneous*—though he might be wrong in going to a particular place, he was quite right in moving in search of them *All is mine right or wrong*—the credit is wholly mine if I have acted right, the blame is wholly mine if I have acted wrong Of his similar remark on the former occasion—"By that opinion I must stand or fall" See p 95.

## Para. 54.

*Bore up*—sailed.

[Page 194.] *Put back*—retreated in fear to Toulon *Weathered*—successfully encountered *Gave him . superiority*—comforted him with the thought that the British sailors were superior to the French *Gulf of Lyons gale*—a storm such as is common in the Gulf of Lyons, a gulf of the Mediterranean on the south-east of France The name of the gulf is derived from the violence of the waves on this part of the coast *Buffeted*—successfully encountered *Not carried away a spar*—without sustaining the slightest injury. *Braved*—boldly encountered *Mastered*—overpowered. *Thwarted and impeded*—hampored in his movements *Vexatiously*—in a way that caused him annoyance *Gulf of Cagliari*—a gulf on which Cagliari, the capital of Sardinia,

is situated *Without a bulkhead up*—A bulkhead is a wooden partition separating the cabins of a ship. During a battle such of them as are removeable are cleared away. The phrase therefore means—‘prepared for battle.’ *Gulf of Palma*—the large bay on which Palma, the capital of the island of Majorca in the Mediterranean, is situated. *Rendez-vous*—the place where his ships were to collect.

### Para 55.

*Villeneuve*—a French admiral who held a command at the battle of the Nile. In 1805 he was appointed to the command of a French fleet, with which he encountered the English fleet under Nelson, by whom his squadron was annihilated at Trafalgar. He was taken prisoner and after being detained in England until the following year, returned to France, where, expecting to be disgraced by Napoleon, he committed suicide in 1806. *Last of March*—31st of March. *Covered*—defended. *Gantheaume*—a French admiral who took Napoleon back to France from Egypt, and then attempted to carry succours to the French army in Egypt.

[Page 195]. *Brest*—a seaport city of France, one of the chief stations of the French navy, 320 miles south-west of Paris. *Beating*—sailing with great difficulty. *Cape de Gatte*—a promontory on the coast of Spain in the province of Grenada. *One gleam of comfort only came across him in*—his only consolation in his misery was.

### Para. 56.

*Flown away*—ended. *Side-wind*—For example if Nelson desired to go north, a north-west or north-east wind would be a side wind. *Deadfoul*—the wind is directly contrary. ‘Foul’ means unfavourable, and is the opposite of ‘fair’; ‘dead’ here means ‘directly’ or ‘completely’. *My soul is fully made up*—I have decided. *Go near to kill me*—almost bring about my death. *Cast down*—dejected; doing nothing through despair. *The Gut*—the main part of the channel between Spain and Africa. *Tetuan*—a seaport of Morocco on the Mediterranean. *The Antipodes*—seems here to mean

America. *The physicians .....England*—This is equivalent to saying that Nelson's health was very bad.

### Para. 57.

*That fleet from which he won his title*—the French fleet he so signally defeated off Cape St Vincent for which he was rewarded with an earldom *Momentous*—important *The flag of his country*—the British fleet Donald Campbell, though in the Portuguese employ, was an Englishman *Wind to their wish*—favourable wind *What*—the voyage *He*—Nelson *Necessarily retired at his approach*—of course retreated with fear Because Sir John Quid was a very timid and incompetent officer. *Admiral Gravina*—a Spanish admiral whose fleet was destroyed by Nelson at the battle of Trafalgar. *Came out to him*—joined Villeneuve. *Martinique*—an island of the West Indies, and one of the largest of the Windward group *Guadeloupe*—an island of the West Indies, and one of the largest of the Leeward group *Apiece*—singly. *When I haul down my colours ...then*—not till I surrender should you surrender He means to say that just as he is determined never to surrender, his sailors too should determine to do the same

### Para. 58.

*35 days' start*—i e, they had set sail 35 days before Nelson *Gain*—make up the delay *Madeira*—the largest island of a group off the west coast of Africa in the Atlantic Ocean. *Barbadoes*—the most eastern of the British West India Islands of the Windward group in the Atlantic Ocean.

[Page 197] *Accounts*—information *The combined fleet*—the combined French and Spanish fleet *St Lucia*—one of the Windward Islands, 30 miles south of Martinique. *Tobago*—one of the British West Indian Islands belonging to the Windward group *Trinidad*—the most southern of the British West Indian islands, opposite the northern mouth of the Orinoco, South America, and within seven miles of the continent. *He was alone in his opinion*—everyone else

differed from him *Yielded it*—expressed his agreement with what the others said *Foreboding*—ominous *You lose me the French fleet*—I shall not be able to find and defeat the French fleet. *Sir William Myers*—the British general at Barbadoes

### Para. 59.

*Accident confirmed the false intelligence*—a peculiar incident happened which led him to believe that his information was correct,—that the French were bound for Trinidad. *General alarm*—the fear of the inhabitants for a French invasion *Boarded*—attacked by the French fleet *Bocas of Trinidad*—narrow channels between Trinidad and the continent of South America. *Bay of Paria*—an inlet of the Caribbean Sea, South America, lying between the island of Trinidad and the mainland of Venezuela *To make the mouths of the Orinoco, &c*—to win as splendid a victory over the French fleet here as he had done at the battle of the Nile *Accident*—unintentional error on the part of the Tobago merchant's schooner *Artifice*—the deception of the American brig *Fetching to windward*—getting to the windward side *Any other fleet*—Any other fleet, under similar circumstances, could never have been able to get to the windward of Granada. But Nelson, being an exceptionally able seaman, could do it. *Granada*—one of the Windward islands, 90 miles to the north-west of Tobago.

### Para. 60.

*The Diamond Rock*—a small island off the south-west coast of Martinique *Antigua*—one of the British West India islands *Where Rodney defeated De Grasse*—Admiral Rodney had defeated a French fleet under Count De Grasse off Dominica in the West Indies in 1782, that is, twenty-three years before *By computation*—as he calculated *Very miserable*—very anxious *Cape Spatel*—a promontory of Africa at the entrance of the Straits of Gibraltar *I cannot help myself*—I feel helpless. *Two years wanting ten days*—i. e., 720 days.

## Para. 61.

[page 199] *Ferrol*—a seaport on the north-west coast of Spain. *Rochefort*—a seaport and naval arsenal of France. *Ushant*—an island on the north-west coast of France, 25 miles from Brest. *Best*—destination.

## Para. 62.

*Penetration*—sagacity. *Ceuta*—a fortified seaport of Morocco, opposite Gibraltar. *Knowing whither to betake himself*—sailing to any particular place. *Casi*—event. *Proofs of sagacity which Voltaire in his "Zadig" &c*—"Zadig a sage, was the hero of a well known novel of Voltaire. Among other proof- of his sagacity he is represented as inferring from the traces left by a horse he had never seen that it galloped well, was five feet high, and had a small hoof; that its tail was three feet and a half long; that the studs of its bits were of twenty-three carat gold, and that its shoes were of silver (Macmillan). This event, which reminded Southey of Voltaire's *Zadig*, was the capture of a wreck on which were found some papers, by an examination of which Nelson was able to draw a series of conclusions about the whereabouts of the French fleet. These inferences were extremely clever, like those which Voltaire's *Zadig* had learnt to draw from very insufficient data. *The Azores*—a group of nine islands in the Atlantic Ocean. *Been run on board*—come in collision with

[page 200] *The prize-master*—the French officer who was sent to command this captured privateer. *His reckoning*—the calculation of the approximate position of the ship he had left. The prize-master would naturally have made this calculation before leaving the French ship and taking the command of the new captured ship, and have written it down in the log-book of his new ship in order to make it the starting point of a new series of daily calculations. He tried therefore to calculate his new ship's position by back reckonings, that is, by beginning to calculate from her last known position, which happened to be Corvo, an island of the Azores group. He was enabled to do so from the entries in the log-



book made by the English officers *The dirty paper contains her work for the number of days* Corvo—the entries in the log-book made by the English officers since the ship left Corvo, were copied out by the French officer on this dirty piece of paper *An unaccounted-for run*—the distance travelled by the ship subsequently, which was written on the dirty paper but not mentioned in the log-book *Which I take to have been the chase*—Nelson explained this as due to the fact of no entries having been made in the log-book when the ship was being chased by the French fleet *These two ships*—the two ships mentioned in the privateer's log-book as having appeared “in the W N W” *At their heels*—pursuing them

### Para. 63.

*The Channel Fleet*—the British fleet guarding the English Channel

## CHAPTER IX

### BATTLE OF TRAFALGAR.

#### Para. 1

*Cape Finistere*—or “Land’s End,” the north-west point of Spain *Nelson had introduced a new era*—from Nelson’s time the standard of what might be called a great victory was greatly raised Nelson’s splendid victories, very much more splendid than any victories won before by other commanders, had raised the expectation of the nation to great things, so that they were not now content with only a tolerably good victory. *A somewhat similar occasion*—See pp 54—55.  
Para 24

#### Para. 2.

*Those islands where they expected, &c*—i.e., the West Indian islands

#### Para. 3.

[Page 202] *Vigo*—a fortified seaport-town of Spain on the Atlantic. *Drubbing*—beating. *He wanted resolution*—he

had no heart. *Drive away the thought*—give up the idea of beating the French *Let the man trudge it who has lost his budget*—hard work can only be expected from those who are in want. *His countenance belied his lips*—he looked so uneasy that he had to reveal what he first intended to conceal. *To call the king his uncle*—to be a member of the royal family; i. e. to win fame.

#### Para. 4.

*As his own property*—as things he had a right to take possession of. *However we may lament your absence*—though we shall be very sorry for your going away. *A quiet heart*—peace of mind.

[Page 203.] *If there were more Emmas.....Nelsons*—to be a hero one requires the inspiration of a beautiful woman like you.

#### Para. 5.

*Lord Barnham*—First Lord of the Admiralty. *The same spirit actuates the whole profession*—all the British naval officers are equally brave and patriotic. *Choose wrong*—select unworthy men. *No appointment was ever..... nation*—Nelson's appointment to command a fleet against the French on this occasion was unanimously approved of by the whole nation. *Been half around the sea-girt ball*—travelled over half the globe. *Hunter*—one who had defeated and driven them away. *Gaul*—Frenchman. 'Gaul' was the old name of France. *Reap the spoils*—enjoy the rewards.

#### Para. 6.

*To bear his flag*—to be his flag-ship. *Upholsterer*—one who supplies furniture, beds, &c. *Its history*—how he came to be in possession of it. *He might want it*—i. e., he will die.

[Page 204] *You might probably have been a lord*—i. e., I might probably have been killed. As Nelson had no son, his brother would succeed to the title on his death and become Lord Nelson. *A dead set*—a determined attack.

#### Para. 7.

*Once*—See p 126 Para 27. *With gloomy satisfaction*—He was miserable and he wished to die.

*Bow*—resign myself to His will. *Amen*—be it so.

### Para. 8.

*By-way*—an unfrequented road *In his train*—behind him *Alloy*—mixture *With all his heart and with all his soul* . *strenoth*—A Biblical sentence See *Mark*, xii 30. *Pushed off*—left the shore

[Page 205] *Wedged*—squeezed *Not very prudently* . . . *occasion*—It was not proper for the police to keep back the crowd from cheering Nelson as he was going <sup>to</sup> to fight the French *Compelled to retreat*—because the people were furious.

### Para. 9.

*Venturing to sea*—coming out of the harbour. *Fire no salute*—lest it should betray his presence to the Spaniards.

### Para. 10.

*Forgot his rank as commander*—greeted him most cordially They were so sincere and enthusiastic in their greeting, that they did not show the rigid respect due to him as commander-in-chief *Resumed the command*—joined active service again *Secrecy is seldom practicable*—because public measures are generally discussed in Parliament beforehand *But the enemy knew that Admiral Louis, &c*—what the French knew was advantageous for Nelson They knew that a number of English ships had left the coast, and so they believed that the British fleet was considerably reduced

### Para. 11.

[Page 206] *Decoy the enemy out*—induce the French ships to come out of the harbour *Forced to sea*—obliged to come out of the harbour *The French ports in the bay*—such as Nantes, Bordeaux and others in the Bay of Biscay. *Ayamonte*—a fortified town of Spain near the mouth of the Guadiana. *Algeziras*—a seaport of Spain in the province of Cadiz, 6 miles west of Gibralter on the opposite side of the bay *Thus taken of the neutral flag*—which the Danes were taking

of their neutrality by carrying provisions to the French and Spanish fleets in the Spanish harbours *Put an end . . . seas*—utterly crush the sea power of France

#### Para. 12.

*Insure*—guarantee *Pledge myself*—I guarantee that we shall fight our best *Have these things upon my mind*—be anxious in the expectation of a battle.

#### Para. 13.

*The eyes of the fleet*—because they bring information about the whereabouts of the enemy.

[Page 207] *The Carthagena squadron*—the Spanish ships in the port of Carthagena *Formidable contingency*—a dangerous thing which might happen

#### Para. 14.

*Sensitive delicacy*—he was careful not to give them offence *An inquiry into the previous engagement*—the court martial to be held respecting his former imperfect victory. *Ill as such a ship . . . spared*—though it was a great loss to the strength of his fleet to let such a large ship go from him

#### Para. 15.

[Page 208] *The Nelson touch*—the plan of attack he had decided on ‘Touch’ here means ‘characteristic trait’ *As far as a man dare venture . . . found in*—so far as I have been able to form one, because it is difficult to form a definite plan of action when the enemy’s position is so unsettled. *Place you perfectly at ease*—fully acquaint you. *Give full scope to your judgment*—allow you great discretion. *No man will render your services more justice*—I shall see that your services are as eminently rewarded as they deserve. *Nelson and Bronte*—We know that Nelson was proud of his Sicilian title, and hence in his private letters he used to sign himself as “Nelson and Bronte.”

## Para. 16.

*The fleet in*—the British fleet was to be arranged in. *The second in command*—Collingwood *Cut off three or four ahead of the centre*—break through the French line a little in advance of the centre, and so separate from the front line the three or four ships between the front line and the centre *Adapted*—made suited *Supply any deficiency of signals and act accordingly*—do of their own accord anything they thought necessary but were not commanded to do by the admiral *Returned*—officially reported *The patriotic fund*—an association whose object is to help the families of people who are killed in the service of their country

## Para. 17.

[Page 209] *Repeated the signal*—The signal was made by the frigates and repeated by the *Mars* for the benefit for the whole fleet *The repeating ships*—the ships that repeat for the information of the whole fleet the signals made by the admirals or by ships on the look-out *Hore to*—checked her course

## Para. 18.

*Telegraphed*—so by means of flag signals The electric telegraph was not invented then *Keep sight of the enemy*—continue watching in what direction they go *Keep the port of Cadiz open*—prevent their being intercepted from entering the port of Cadiz *Tyrolese*—inhabitants of Tyrol, a province of Austria Of all the countries of Europe, Tyrol is the most exclusively mountainous

[Page 210] *The wicked tyrant*—Napoleon By the Treaty of Presberg, Tyrol was transferred to Bavaria, which caused an insurrection of the inhabitants, when the French assisted the Bavarians in reducing them to subjection Their patriotic leader, Hofer, was executed by Napoleon Similarly Napoleon conquered Spain for himself and gave it to be ruled by his brother

## Para. 19.

*From which few persons are entirely exempt*—which is common to all men in some degree. *This was to be the day*

of his battle also—Curiously enough Nelson's belief proved to be true. It was a strange prophetic instinct. The battle of Trafalgar, as all the world knows now, was fought on October 21st, 1805. *Swell*—a succession of large waves. *The lee line*—the line further away from the point from which the wind blew. *The weather line*—the line nearer to the point from which the wind blew. *All was as it should be*—the preparations for the battle were complete and satisfactory. *Tarnish it*—render it infamous. *Alight*—descend.

#### Para. 20.

[Page 211.] *Devotional duties*—duties of praying. *The Right Honourable Sir William Hamilton*—The title 'the Right Honourable' is put before Sir William's name because he was a privy councillor. *King of Spain*—Charles IV. *His brother the king of Naples*—Ferdinand IV. *Strike a stroke against*—attack. *The opportunity might have been offered*—In the previous sentence Nelson says that Sir John Jervis was ordered to attack the French when he found opportunity. He did not do so, because he did not get the opportunity. Nevertheless, says Nelson here, the information given by Lady Hamilton was none the less valuable. *To be wrote*—to be written. *Put into*—anchor in. *A legacy*—one to be cared for and protected.

#### Para. 21.

[Page 212.] *In good spirits*—cheerful. *Exhilaration* is a stronger form of joy than is indicated by the word 'cheerful.'

#### Para. 22

*Every alternate ship being about a cable's length astern*—The plan of battle was that each ship of the front line had one ship of the second line ahead and another astern. *A triumphant issue to the day*—a glorious victory. *What he should consider as a victory*—what his idea of a victory was. *Handsome*—skilful.

[Page 213] *Answering acclamation*—cheers which they gave on seeing the signal, showing that they heartily ap-

proved of it. *The spirit which it breathed*—Nelson's patriotism and devotion to duty which that signal illustrated *The great Disposer of all events*—God upon whom depends the results of all actions

### Para. 23.

*Ominous apprehension*—His officers were afraid lest the enemy should be able to identify him with the help of his ornaments and should shoot him dead.

[Page 214] *The zeal of England*—because the strength and safety of England depended on Nelson *Keep out of action*—remain at a safe distance

### Para. 24.

*The last infirmity of this noble mind*—his love of fame. This is a quotation from Milton—

“Fame is the spur which the clear spirit doth raise  
That last infirmity of noble minds”

—*Lycidas*.

*Carry all her sail*—sail as fast as she could *Shortening sail*—sailing more slowly *Pressing on*—advancing *To obey his own orders*—so by getting ahead of him *Any other assailants*—This suggests that British sailors are so brave that they are never afraid of the enemy. *Winning what they saw*—capturing the combined fleet

### Para. 25.

*The French admiral*—Villeneuve. *Such conduct*—such an excellent plan of attack *Made his own dispositions*—arranged his own ships in battle order.

[Page 215] *Within their range*—sufficiently near them to be fired on *To repair to*—to go to *An enemy*—a French ship *I shall never see you again*—These words were very prophetic.

## Para. 26.

*Column*—line of ships. *Two points*—*i e*, two points of the mariner's compass, the whole circumference of which is divided into thirty two-points

*Therefore*—because Nelson's line did not sail quite so straight against the enemy as Collingwood's *At the muzzle of her guns*—in a close contest, so that the mouths of her guns almost touched the other ship *What would Nelson give to be here*—Nelson would have been delighted indeed if he had had the chance of being the first to commence the battle *With gratitude*—because Nelson had reconciled them to each other after a slight quarrel that had taken place between them *They were not upon good terms*—they had a slight misunderstanding with each other.

[Page 216] *Good terms with each other*—Nelson means it is extremely surprising to find them having a petty difference of their own at a time when all should combine against the common enemy *Shake hands like Englishmen*—forget your petty quarrel and become friends again.

## Para. 27.

*A gun at a time*—single guns, as opposed to broadsides. *Till they saw that a shot, &c.*—This showed them that they had got the correct range *Then they opened her broadsides*—Had they fired broadsides before this, they would have unnecessarily wasted a great deal of their powder and shot. *Close with them*—come up to them and attack them. *Late in the action*—near the close of the battle *Feel the necessity .....strike*—feel that they were being overpowered and that their only chance of safety would lie in peaceful surrender. *The Santissima Trinidad, Nelson's old acquaintance*—because he had fought this ship at the battle of Cape St Vincent. See p. 73, sixth line from the bottom.

## Para. 28.

*Suffer so much*—have a large number of them killed at one time. *The fore-brace bits*—the fore-braces are ropes by which



the position of the fore-sail is changed Bits are wooden frames to which ropes are fastened *Warm work*—heavy firing

### Para. 29.

[Page 217] *Studding sails*—light sails extending on each side of the principal sails *Boom*—a large spar, used to extend the foot of a sail *It does not signify much*—both courses are equally good *Tiller ropes*—ropes connecting the handle of the rudder to the wheel *Let down*—closed *Ports*—passages *Musketry*—i. e., riflemen *Endangers*—involves the danger of *Murderous*—cruel and improper. *Picked off*—shot

### Para. 30.

*Fell on board*—collided with. *Tier*—a row of ships. *Depressed*—lowered the muzzles *Pass through*—sc. the Redoubtable. *Temeraire*—the English ship on the other side of the Redoubtable *Run out*—projected from the port holes after being re-loaded

### Para. 31.

[Page 218] *Ascertaining the fact*—sc. whether she had surrendered or not *Epaulette*—a shoulder ornament worn by officers in the army and navy *Done for me*—made an end of me

### Para. 32.

*Rove*—passed through the holes *Badges of honour*—stars *With sorrow*—because though it was the glad some news of victory yet it was mixed up with the news of Nelson's death. *Berth*—a compartment in a ship

[Page 219] *No human care could avail him*—no medical aid could save his life

### Para. 33.

*Which now began to declare itself*—from this moment signs of victory began to appear, the English began to perceive that the French were giving way *That some fatal cause pre-*

vented him—that he was dead and so it was that he could not come.

#### Para. 34.

*How goes the day with us ?—how are the English faring in the battle ? Fresh ships—reserve ships. Going fast—dying rapidly. Mr. Betty—the surgeon*

[Page 220] *With a heart almost bursting—in very great sorrow.*

#### Para. 35.

*Feeling—sensitivity Live a little longer—because then he hoped he would die in the consciousness of victory which was yet uncertain I bargained for—I expected. He refers to what he had told Hardy before this. See p. 212, fourth line from the bottom.*

#### Para. 36.

*Don't throw me overboard—don't bury me in the sea. The usual method of burial at sea is to wrap the body in a hammock, and drop it into the sea with a number of shots to make it heavy. Cf. Tennyson—*

“ His heavy-shotted hammock-shroud  
Drops in his vast and wandering grave ”

—*In Memoriam*

*To order otherwise—It seems that Nelson expected to be buried in Westminster Abbey or St Paul's Cathedral.*

#### Para. 37.

[Page 221] *Articulation—speech.*

[Foot note p. 221 — *Work most magically in the thoughts of—inspire. Strategist—a naval officer versed in naval tactics. Swiftess of resolution—quick determination. Whilst there remains a British keel afloat—so long as England has any navy at all.*]

## Para. 38.

*He did not live to boast .. done*—he too was soon killed.

[Page 222 ] *In the top*—on the masthead The top is a sort of platform, surrounding the head of the lower mast and projecting on all sides

## Para. 39

*Fore chains*—planks projecting round the stem *Implements of destruction which other nations, &c*—As in recent times the Dum-Dum bullets have been laid aside

[Page 223 ] *Even this dreadful cry*—the cry of “fire.” *Self-possession*—presence of mind *Fell in*—sloped inwards *Down*—closed.

## Para. 40

*Vivacity*—enthusiasm. *Often as the superiority ... conflict*—though the English have won many naval victories over the French, the victory at Trafalgar was the most complete of all *Muzzle to muzzle*—in a close contest.

[Page 224 ] *Lowered*—closed

## Para. 41.

*The spirit*—the desire to die with the consciousness of victory *Back their topsails—i. e.*, make the ships almost motionless and so enable the gunners to take better aim than they could on a sailing ship

## Para. 42.

*To man the guns against*—as artillerymen who were ready to fire upon *Quietly go below*—cease firing, for they did not wish to fire on their own countrymen *The fleet from whose destruction they fled*—the rest of the French fleet whom he deserted

## Para. 43.

[Page 225.] *Such a crime*—desertion of their country's ships during an action. *Delivered Dumanoir and his captains*

up to Spain—because they were guilty of firing on some of the Spanish ships.

#### Para. 44

*Destroyed himself*—committed suicide. *The tyrant added Villeneuve to the police*—Villeneuve was secretly put to death by Napoleon's orders

#### Para. 45.

[Page 226] *St Nelson*—Nelson so was much honoured and beloved that his sailors went the length of canonizing him, as men who had done good service to the Church were canonized by the Pope in the early Catholic times. *Interment—burial* *Assisted*—took part.

#### Para. 46.

*Startled*—were shocked. *It seemed as if we had never till then*. *Known, &c.*—Of. Wordsworth—

“I travelled among unknown men,  
In lands beyond the sea :  
Nor English did I know till then  
What love I bore to thee !”

*What the country has lost.....was scarcely taken into the account of grief*—i. e., Nelson's death was mourned not so much as a loss sustained by the nation collectively, as one sustained by each Englishman individually. *Reared*—trained. *It was not from any selfish reflection &c.*—The idea is that Nelson's death was mourned not because it was a great loss to England, but because he was so much beloved and esteemed by his countrymen

#### Para. 47.

[Page 227.] *Posthumous*—after death *The legislature—the Parliament* *Wakened*—caused them to be rung merrily. “*Old men from the chimney-corner*”—This is a quotation from Denham. *Already*—before the battle of Trafalgar was fought.

## Para 48.

[Page 228.] *In the course of nature*—had he not been shot. *He cannot be said to have fallen prematurely ....done*—a man who dies when his work is done is not said to die prematurely however young he may be at death. So Nelson's death was not a premature death. *At the height of human fame*—as famous as it is possible for any man to be. *Martyred*—made a martyr by being put to death by his enemies. *The chariot, and the horses of fire*—the way in which some of the prophets of old had passed away. Here is an allusion to the prophet Elijah who was taken up to heaven in a chariot drawn by horses of fire. See 2 Kings ii 11. *He could scarcely have departed .glory*—Southey means that if Nelson had literally been carried up to heaven like the prophet Elijah, that would have been just as glorious a death as that he met on board the *Victory* in the hour of a most glorious victory. *Mantle of inspiration*—As Elijah ascended to heaven his prophetic mantle fell down and his successor, Elisha, picked it up. *Thousands of the youth of England*—the sailors and the naval officers. *The old mythologist*—Hesiod, an old Greek poet of the 8th century before Christ. The Greek quotation may be translated into prose thus —“They are deities by the counsels of mighty Zeus, good, living on earth, guardians of mortal men.”

## QUESTIONS FOR HOME EXERCISES.

I.—What lessons do we learn from a study of Nelson's Life?

II.—(a) In what respects was Nelson the embodiment of the sea power of Great Britain?

(b) Show the historical importance of the Battle of the Nile

III.—Give a short description of each of the several splendid victories won by Nelson

IV.—Explain :—

✓(a) The pain which is felt when we are first transplanted from our native soil, when the living branch is cut from the parent tree, is one of the most poignant which we have to endure through life. There are after griefs which wound more deeply, which leave behind them scars never to be effaced, which bruise the spirit, and sometimes break the heart; but never do we feel so keenly the want of love, the necessity of being loved, and the sense of utter desertion, as when we first leave the haven of home, and are, as it were, pushed off upon the stream of life

(b) The fleet arrived in those seas at a time when the South of France would willingly have formed itself into a separate republic under the protection of England; but good principles had been at that time perilously abused by ignorant and profligate men, and, in its fear and hatred of democracy, the English government abhorred whatever was republican

(c) Corsica is a country large enough, and sufficiently distant from the nearest shores, to have subsisted as an independent state if the welfare and happiness of the human race had ever been considered as the end and aim of policy.

(d) They had witnessed the heartburning of rival chiefs and the dissensions among the patriots, and perceiving the state of barbarism to which continual oppression, and habits of lawless turbulence had reduced the nation, did not recollect that the vices of the people were owing to their unhappy circumstances, but that the virtues which they displayed arose from their own nature.

(e) If they knew of a freeman at the other end of the world. I believe they would go thither for the mere pleasure of extirpating him.

(f) " We are now to our country. like the prophet Elisha stretched over the dead body of the Shunamite--eye to eye, nose to nose, mouth to mouth. It begins to recover warmth, to revive : I hope it will yet regain health and vigour "

(g) Among the enormities which France has committed, this action seems but as a speck ; yet the foulest murderer that ever suffered by the hands of the executioner has infinitely less guilt upon his soul than the statesman who concluded this treaty, and the monarch who sanctioned and confirmed it.

(h) But the course of events in France soon dispelled those hopes of a new and better order of things which Paoli, in common with so many of the friends of human kind, had indulged

(i) Armies go so slow that seamen think they never mean to get forward ; but I daresay they act on a surer principle, although we seldom fail.

(j) Nelson described himself as the reed among the oaks, bowing before the storm when they were laid low by it

(L) What the event would have been he knew from his prophetic feelings, and his own consciousness of power ; and we also know it now, for Aboukir and Trafalgar have told it us.

The politics of courts are so mean that privatemens would be ashamed to act in the same way · all is trick and finesse, to which the common cause is sacrificed.

✓(m) A romantic obscurity would have hung over the expedition to Egypt, and he would have escaped the perpetration of those crimes which have incarnadined his soul with a deeper dye than that of the purple for which he committed them,—those acts of perfidy, midnight murder, usurpation, and remorseless tyranny, which have consigned his name to universal execration, now and for ever

(n) Captain Ball judged rightly of the public, whose first impulses, though from want of sufficient information they must frequently be erroneous, are generally founded upon just feelings. But the public are easily misled, and there are always persons ready to mislead them.

✓(o) And surely, watering at the fountain of Arethusa, we must have victory

✓(p) There is no *if* in the case ; that we shall succeed is certain ; who may live to tell the story, is a very different question.

✓(q) True, indeed, whatever title had been bestowed, whether viscount, earl, marquis, duke, or prince, if our laws had so permitted, he who received it would have been Nelson still.

✓(r) The language which the Directory held towards it was well described by Sir William Hamilton as being exactly the language of a highwayman.

✓(s) Here were all the pompous circumstance, and exciting reality of war without its effects, for this ostentatious display, was but a bloodless prelude to the wide and sweeping destruction which was soon to follow.

(t) Close with a Frenchman but outmanœuvre a Russian.

(u) The very silence which follows the cessation of such a battle becomes a weight upon the heart at first, rather than a relief.



(v) This was the language of a man who, while he is giving utterance to an uneasy thought, clothes it half in jest because he half repents that it has been disclosed.

(w) Seamen are but bad negotiators, for we put to issue what diplomatic forms would be five months long.

(x) He governed men by their reasons and their affections

(y) The film was cleared from his eyes, and now, when the French no longer went abroad with the cry of liberty and equality, he saw that the oppression and misrule of the powers which had been opposed to them had been the main causes of their success and that those causes would still prepare the way before them.

(z) He proceeded off Cape St Vincent, rather cruising for intelligence than knowing whither to betake himself; and here a case occurred that, more than any other event in real history, resembles those whimsical proofs of sagacity which Voltaire, in his "Zadig," has borrowed from the orientals

V — Explain :—

(a) If there were more Emmas, there would be more Nelsons

(b) The death of Nelson was felt in England as something more than a public calamity.

(c) Yet he cannot be said to have fallen prematurely whose work was done, nor ought he to be lamented who died so full of honours and at the height of human fame.

(d) The most triumphant death is that of the martyr: the most awful is that of the martyred patriot; the most splendid that of the hero in the hour of victory; and if the chariot and horses of fire had been vouchsafed for Nelson's translation, he could scarcely have departed in a brighter blaze of glory.

(e) He has left us, not indeed his mantle of inspiration, but a name and an example which are at this hour inspiring thousands of the youth of England,—a name which is our pride, and an example which will continue to be our shield and our strength.

VI.—Explain the following in connection with the context, showing what characteristics in Nelson each illustrates:—

(i) We must go on ; remember, brother, it was left to our honour.

(b) Sir, I wished to kill the bear that I might carry the skin to my father.

(c) True honour, I hope, predominates in my mind far above riches.

(d) Nothing is wanting, Sir, to make you the darling of the English nation, but truth. Sorry I am to say, much to the contrary has been dispersed.

(e) We will fag ourselves to death, before any blame shall lie at our doors.

(f) Now, had we taken ten sail and allowed the eleventh to escape, when it had been possible to get at her, I could never have called it well done.

(g) Much as I shall rejoice to see England, I lament our present orders in sackcloth and ashes, so dishonourable to the dignity of England, whose fleets are equal to meet the world in arms.

(h) I had rather suffer death than alarm Mrs Freemantle by letting her see me in this state, when I can give her no tidings whatever of her husband.

(i) A left-handed admiral will never again be considered as useful, therefore the sooner I get to a very humble cottage the better, and make room for a sounder man to serve the State.

✓(j) I ought not to call what has happened to the Vanguard by the cold name of accident ; I believe firmly it was the Almighty's goodness to check my consummate

✓(k) I am before your lordship's judgment, and under all circumstances, it is decided that I am wrong, I t for the sake of our country to be superseded, for at this moment, when I know the French are not in Alexandria, I hold the same opinion as off Cape Passaro,—that, under all circumstances, I was right in steering for Alexandria ; and in my opinion I must stand or fall

✓(l) Before this time tomorrow, I shall have gained a peerage or Westminster Abbey.

✓(m) No ! I will take my turn with my brave fellows.

(n) I act from the circumstances of the moment ; my feel may be most advantageous for the cause, which I serve, taking all responsibility on myself.

(o) What a state am I in ! If I go I risk, and more than risk, Sicily : for we know from experience that more depends upon opinion than upon acts themselves, and as I stay my heart is breaking

✓(p) Believe me, my only wish is to sink with honour into the grave ; and when that shall please God, I shall meet death with a smile. Not that I am insensible to the honours and riches my king and country have heaped upon me—so much more than any officer could deserve, yet am I ready to quit this world of trouble, and envy none but those of the estate six feet by two

(q) I am well aware of the consequences of disobeying my orders, but as I have often before risked my life for the good cause, so I with cheerfulness did my commission. for although a military tribunal may think me criminal, the world will approve of my conduct, and I regard not my own safety when the honour of my king is at stake.

(r) I feel that I am fitter to do the action than to describe it.

